



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

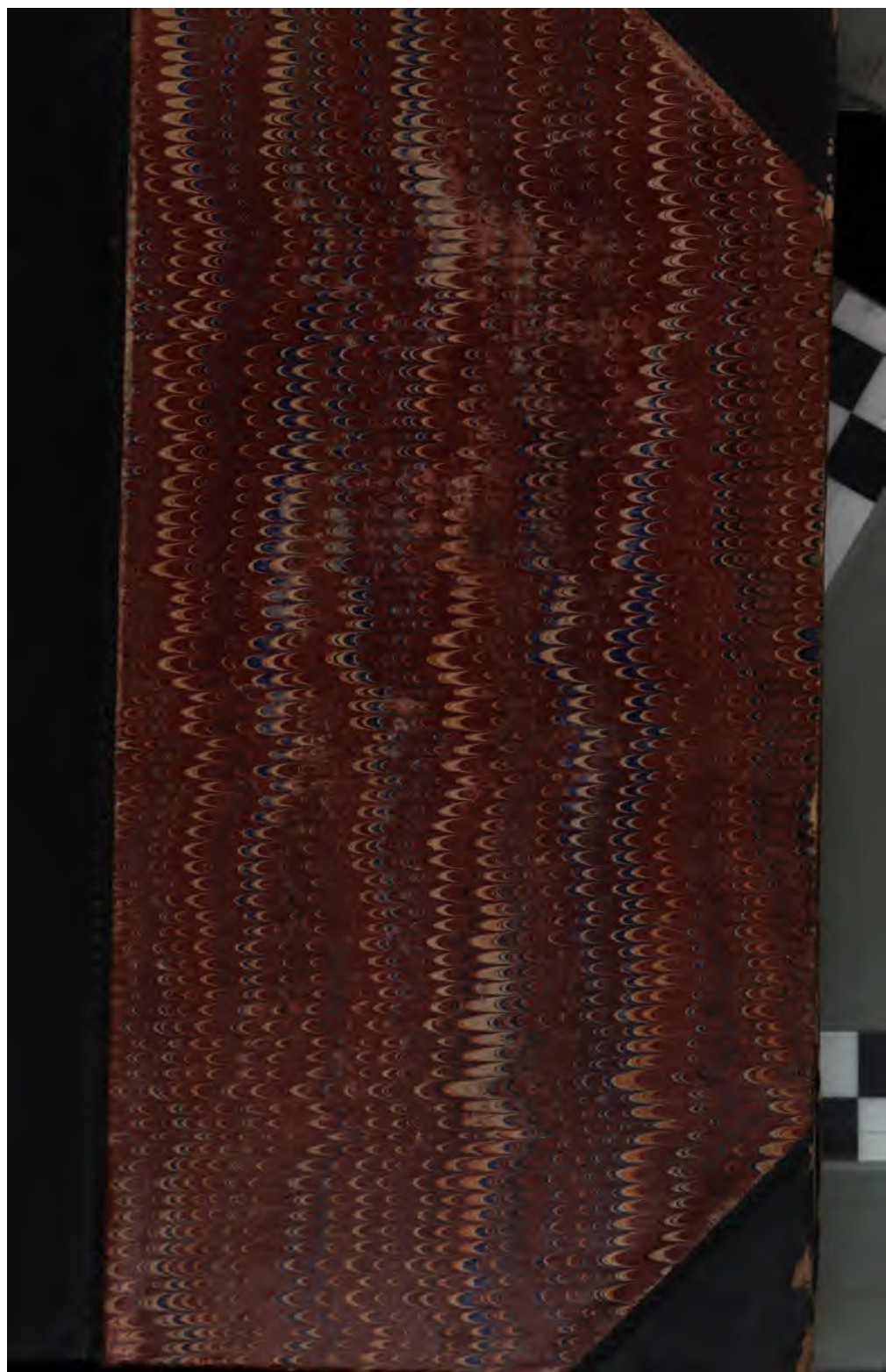
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

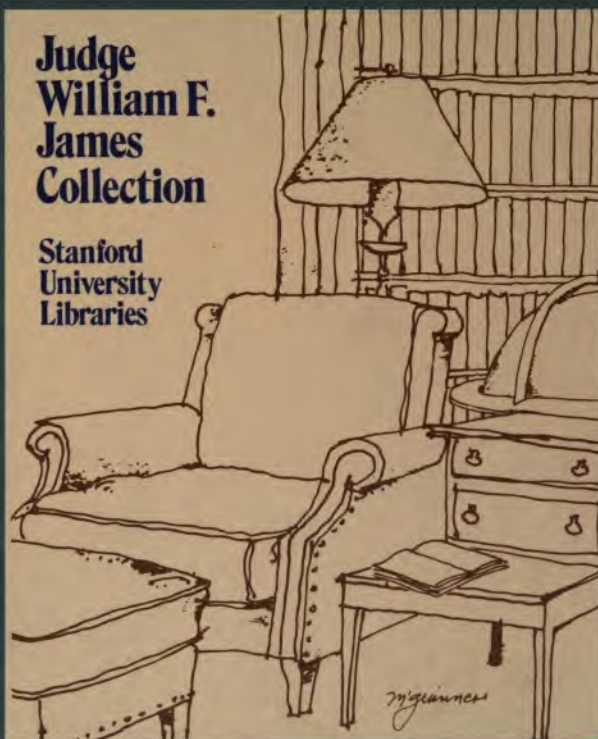
### About Google Book Search

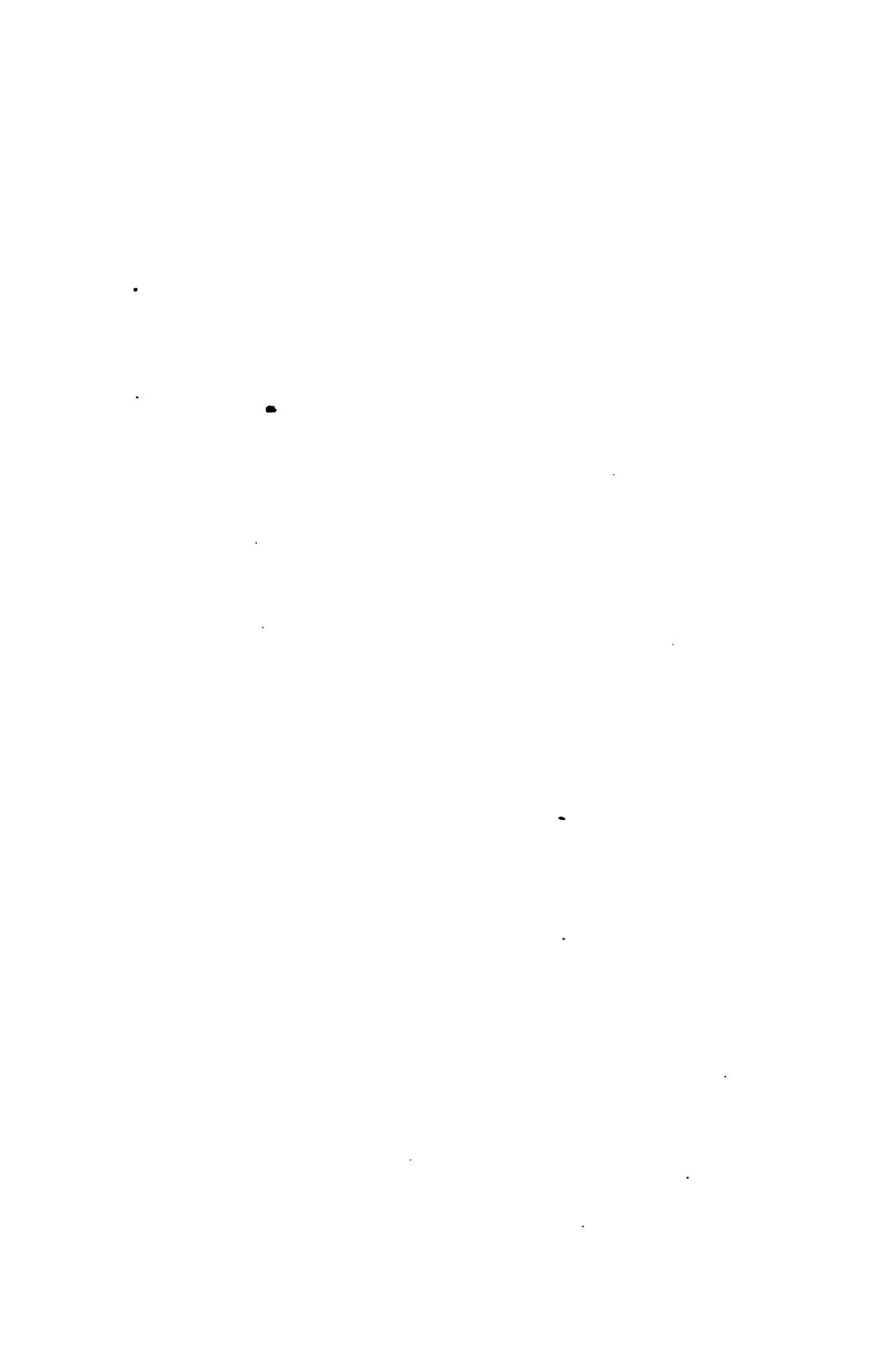
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



**Judge  
William F.  
James  
Collection**

**Stanford  
University  
Libraries**











**SIR JOHN FROISSART'S  
CHRONICLES**

OF

**ENGLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN,**

AND THE

**ADJOINING COUNTRIES,**

**FROM THE LATTER PART OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD II.  
TO THE CORONATION OF HENRY IV.**

NEWLY TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH EDITIONS,  
WITH VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS FROM MANY CELEBRATED MSS.

---

**By THOMAS JOHNES.**

---

**Who so shall telle a tale after a man,  
He mouke reche-ſe, as neigh he can,  
Euerich wo-ſe, if it be in his charge,  
All ſpeke he never ſo rudely and ſo large;  
Or elles he mouke tellen his tale untruewe,  
Or feinen thinges, or finden wordes newe.**

CHAUCER'S PROLOGUE.

**THE THIRD EDITION.**

TO WHICH IS PREFIXED,  
A LIFE OF THE AUTHOR, AN ESSAY ON HIS WORKS,  
A CRITICISM ON HIS HISTORY,  
AND A DISSERTATION ON HIS POETRY.

**VOL. XII.**

**LONDON:**

PRINTED FOR LONGMAN, HURST, REES, AND ORME, PATERNOSTER-ROW;  
AND J. WHITE, FLEET-STREET.

**1808.**

D/113

f77

1968

v.12

# THE CONTENTS

OF

## THE TWELFTH VOLUME.

8

- CHAP. I.** The French Lords who had been Prisoners in Turkey return by Sea to Venice - - - Page 1
- II.** The Lord Louis de Sancerre is made Constable of France, in the Room of the Count d'Eu, who had died in Turkey. —Boucicaut, during his Absence with the Count de Nevers, is appointed Marshal of France in the Place of the Lord Louis de Sancerre.—The French Lords who had been Prisoners in Turkey return to France - - - 17
- III.** The Deaths of the Duke of Gloucester and the Earl of Arundel.—The Manner in which the Dukes of Lancaster and York, and the Londoners, take the Matter - - - 29
- IV.** A great Assembly holden at Rheims, by the Emperor of Germany and King of France, on the Schism in the Church, and on the Means of uniting the two Parties - - - 35



- CHAP. V. The Earl Marshal challenges the Earl of Derby, Son to the Duke of Lancaster, in the Presence of the King and his Council - - 40
- VI. King Richard of England banishes the Earl of Derby from England for Ten Years, and the Earl Marshal for his Life - - - 55
- VII. The Earl of Derby, in consequence of his Banishment, leaves England for France. —The Earl Marshal, in obedience to his Sentence, goes to Flanders, and thence into Lombardy - - 58
- VIII. The Count d'Ostrevant sends Ambassadors to the Earl of Derby.—The Earl arrives at Paris - - - 62
- IX. The Emperor and the King of France pursue the Plans they had settled at Rheims, for an Union of the Church. —The Bishop of Cambray is sent by them to the Pope at Rome.—The Answer that is made him - - 65
- X. The King of France, in conformity to the Advice of his Nobles and the University of Paris, sends the Bishop of Cambray to Pope Benedict at Avignon, on the subject of an Union with the Church, and also his Marshal Boucicaut thither, to constrain the Pope to Obedience by Force of Arms, should there be Occasion - - 69
- XI. In consequence of the Answer of Pope Benedict, the Marshal Boucicaut obliges him by force of Arms to submit himself to the Will of the King of France respecting an Union of the Church - - - 75

- CHAP. XII.** The Marshal Boucicaut returns to Hungary against the Turks.—The Earl of Derby sends to request Permission of the Duke of Lancaster to accompany Boucicaut in this Expedition.—The King of England is solicited by the King of France to engage his Subjects to a Neutrality between the two Popes, until a new Election shall take place; but they refuse compliance with their Monarch's Request - - 82
- XIII.** The Answer the Duke of Lancaster gives the Knight who had been sent to him by the Earl of Derby, to request his Permission to join the Expedition against the Turks.—The Death of the Duke of Lancaster - - 87
- XIV.** The King of England makes the King of France acquainted with the Death of the Duke of Lancaster, but does not notice it to the Earl of Derby, though Son to the late Duke - - 90
- XV.** The Treaty of Marriage between the Earl of Derby and the Daughter of the Duke of Berry is broken off by the King of England, through the Means of the Earl of Salisbury 96
- XVI.** King Richard of England proclaims a Tournament, which is attended by very few Persons.—On setting out for Ireland, he banishes the Earl of Northumberland and his Son the Kingdom - - 104

- CHAP. XVII. The English, and particularly the Londoners, rise in favour of the Earl of Derby against King Richard - - - 109
- XVIII. The Archbishop of Canterbury is sent to France by the Londoners, and others of their Party in England, to bring back the Earl of Derby - - - 114
- XIX. The Earl of Derby takes leave of the King and Lords of France, to visit his Cousin the Duke of Brittany - - - 120
- XX. The Earl of Derby sails from Brittany to England.—His Reception by the Citizens of London - 125
- XXI. The Earl of Derby, now Duke of Lancaster, undertakes the Government of England, and, by the aid of the Londoners, determines to seize the Throne.—He marches in Arms against King Richard at Bristol - - - 129
- XXII. King Richard is informed that the Earl of Derby is marching against him with a powerful Army.—He retires to Flint Castle - - - 132
- XXIII. King Richard surrenders himself to the Earl of Derby, to be conducted to London - - - 135
- XXIV. The Lady of Coucy is taken away from the young Queen of England, and a new Household appointed for her.—King Richard is confined in the Tower of London 143

- CHAP. XXV.** The Earl of Rutland, Constable of England, hearing the King has surrendered, dismisses his Men at Arms. — Four Knights of the King's Chamber, having been put to Death by the Londoners; he is advised by those who were imprisoned with him to resign his Crown to the Duke of Lancaster 146
- XXVI.** King Richard of England resigns his Crown and Kingdom into the Hands of the Duke of Lancaster - - - 153
- XXVII.** A Parliament meets at Westminster, when the Duke of Lancaster is publicly acknowledged King of England.—The great Magnificence of his Coronation - - - 159
- XXVIII.** Intelligence of the Imprisonment of King Richard is carried to France by the Lady of Coucy.—King Charles is much displeased thereat.—The Duke of Bourbon attempts in vain to reduce Bourdeaux, and other Towns in Aquitaine, to the Crown of France - 167
- XXIX.** The Council of France, by Permission of King Henry, send over Persons to visit Isabella, Queen to Richard II. - - - 174
- XXX.** The Earls of Huntingdon and Salisbury, and some others, having failed to murder treacherously King Henry of Lancaster, rise in Arms against him.—They are defeated and beheaded, and their Heads sent to the King - 178

- CHAP. XXXI.** On the Death of John of Montfort, Duke of Brittany, the Bretons undertake the Wardship of the young Duke, and to be friendly to France.—The French King, distrusting the Sentiments of the new Reign in England, makes Provision against any sudden Change 187
- XXXII.** The Death of King Richard.—The Truces are renewed and kept between France and England.—The Earl Marshal, who had been banished England, dies at Venice - - - 190
- XXXIII.** France preserves a Neutrality between the Popes of Rome and Avignon.—The Election of the Emperor Robert - - - 196



THE  
**CHRONICLES**

OF

**ENGLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN, &c.**

**CHAP. I.**

**THE FRENCH LORDS WHO HAD BEEN PRISONERS  
IN TURKEY RETURN BY SEA TO VENICE.**

**W**HEN the count de Nevers and the lords of France who were made prisoners at the battle of Nicopoli (excepting the count d'Eu and the lord de Coucy, who had died) had been some time entertained by the sultan, and had seen great part of his state, he consented they should depart, which was told them by those who had been ordered to attend to their personal wants. The count and his companions waited on the sultan in consequence, to thank him for his kindness and courtesy. On taking his leave, the sultan addressed him, by means of an interpreter, as follows:

‘ John, I am well informed that in thy country thou art a great lord, and son to a powerful prince. Thou art young, and hast many years to look for

ward; and, as thou mayest be blamed for the ill success of thy first attempt in arms, thou mayest perchance, to shake off this imputation and regain thine honour, collect a powerful army to lead against me, and offer battle. If I feared thee, I would make thee swear, and likewise thy companions, on thy faith and honour, that neither thou nor they would ever bear arms against me. But no: I will not demand such an oath: on the contrary, I shall be glad that when thou art returned to thy country, it please thee to assemble an army, and lead it hither. Thou wilt alway find me prepared, and ready to meet thee in the field of battle. What I now say, do thou repeat to any person whom it may please thee to repeat it; for I am ever ready for, and desirous of, deeds of arms, as well as to extend my conquests.'

These high words the count de Nevers and his companions understood well, and never forgot them so long as they lived. After this, when all things for their departure were ready, they were conducted by Ali bashaw and Soli bashaw, with a large escort, to the lords de Mathelin and d'Amine, and the others who had interested themselves for their liberty. Before they embarked on board the galleys destined to carry them, they paid every expense they had incurred at Burfa, or at other places, with so much punctuality, that they were greatly praised.

As they weighed anchor, their conductors returned to the sultan; and the galleys, having a favourable wind, soon arrived at the harbour, where

the count and his friends were received with joy. The lady of the lord de Mathelin was of a certain age, but perfectly well bred, and as fully accomplished as any lady in Greece, for in her youth she had been brought up at the court of Constantinople with the lady Mary of Bourbon. She had from her learnt many things, for the lords and ladies of France are better educated than those in any other country. This lady thought herself highly honoured when she saw the count de Nevers, sir Henry de Bar, Guy de la Trimouille, and the other lords under her roof, and welcomed them with every sign of pleasure. She first clothed them with fine new linen and cloth of Damascus made into gowns and vestments, according to the taste in Greece. After she had dressed the masters, she did the same to their servants in the handsomest manner, each according to his rank. The lords were very thankful for her kindness, and publicly declared their gratitude for her generous conduct, as well as that of the lords de Mathelin and d'Amine, who honoured them by every mark of respect, and administered to their necessities.

News was soon carried to the island of Rhodes, that the sultan had accepted a ransom for the French lords, and that they were now at Mathelin. The intelligence gave much pleasure to the grand master and to all his knights, who proposed to equip and arm two galleys, and send them to Mathelin to convey the count and his fellow-prisoners to Rhodes. This was executed; and, when

ready, sir James de Bracemont\*, a Burgundian, who was marshal of Rhodes, embarked on board, and had a favourable voyage to Mathelin, where he was made heartily welcome by the lord de Mathelin, his lady, and their guests. He remained there four days: on the fifth, the galleys having on board the purveyances of the French lords, the count and his companions took leave of the lord and lady de Mathelin, returning them their best thanks for all the kindness and friendship they had received, especially the count de Nevers, who, as the principal personage, said he was bound at all times hereafter to render them every service in his power.

After many compliments on both sides, the French lords entered the galleys, and, as long as they were in sight, the lord de Mathelin remained on the shore, and after that went home. The galleys, having a favourable wind, arrived at Rhodes, and anchored in the haven, where vessels from Cyprus, Baruth, and other ports in the Levant, usually do. On their landing, they were received by many of the knights of Rhodes, who wear a white cross, in memory of the cross of our LORD JESUS CHRIST, who suffered to deliver others from the pains of hell. They are valiant knights, and give daily assaults by sea or land on the infidels, to support and defend the Christian faith.

~~The MSS. have de Bracemont, which I should prefer.~~



The count de Nevers and the lords of France were received by the grand prior of Rhodes and the grand prior of Aquitaine, in their robes of ceremony, who offered to lend them any sum of money, as far as their abilities extended, to enable them to discharge their daily expenses, which the count and his friends thought a most courteous offer, and thanked them accordingly. In truth, they were in want of money, and the grand prior of Aquitaine, a right valiant knight, as his actions shewed in the Holy Land, lent the count de Nevers thirty thousand francs, which were counted out by sir Regnier Pot, house-steward to the count, and the lord de Rochefort in Burgundy. I believe this sum was as much for his companions as for the count himself, and was divided among them, although the count de Nevers took on himself the whole debt.

The French lords remained some time in the island of Rhodes, to recover and properly array themselves, for the climate was by far more temperate than in the countries where they had lately resided; during the time they tarried at Rhodes, waiting for the galleys from Venice, sir Guy de la Trimouille was seized with so dangerous an illness, that he there departed this life. He ordered his body to be buried on the spot where he died, and was, consequently, interred in the church of Saint John, in the island of Rhodes. His funeral was honourably attended by the French lords, who much regretted his loss, more especially the count de Nevers, who knew that his father, the duke of



Burgundy, would be greatly affected by it, as he had always found him a wife and honest counsellor.

The galleys from Venice at length arrived, properly armed and equipped, to the great joy of the French lords. They were not long in making their preparations to depart, and took leave of the knights of Rhodes, who recommended their order to them, and to all devout souls who would be willing to assist it.

The count de Nevers, the lords Henry de Bar, de Boucicaut, sir William de la Trimouille, the lord de Rochefort, sir Regnier Pot, and the rest, embarked on board the Venetian galleys, the captains of which resolved to touch at the different islands, that their passengers might sail more at their ease, and refresh themselves on shore, and shew the count de Nevers the various islands which lay between Rhodes and Venice. They steered first for Modon\*, which is five hundred miles from Rhodes, and tarried there some days, to amuse themselves, for the port and country belong to the Venetians. From Modon, they had a fine passage to Colefo†, as the sea was calm, where they refreshed themselves; and from Colefo they made for the island of Garre‡, where they did the same: thence they sailed for the island of Chifolignie§; and, having anchored, they landed, and

---

\* Modon, a town and port in the Morea.

† Colefo, I sh [ ] have imagined this to be Corfou, if Cephalonia were not seemingly intended afterwards.

‡ Garre. Q. Zante.

§ Chifolignie. Q. Cephalonia.

were met by a large party of ladies and damsels, who have the government of the island. They received the French lords with joy, and led them to the interior part of the island, which is very beautiful, to amuse and enjoy themselves. Some say, who pretend to be acquainted with the state of this island, and insist upon it, that fairies and nymphs inhabit it, and that frequently merchants from Venice or Genoa, who have been forced by stress of weather to make some stay there, have seen the appearances of them, and have had the truth of these reports confirmed:

The count de Nevers and his friends were very happy with the dames of Cephalonia, for they entertained them gaily, telling them their arrival had been matter of joy to them, from their being knights of honour and renown, for in general they had no other visitors but merchants.

I may be asked, if this island be solely inhabited by women. I answer no; but women have the sovereignty of it: they, however, employ themselves in needle and other works; and make such fine cloths of silk, that none others can be compared to them. The men of the island, being ignorant, are employed to carry abroad these works, wherever they shall think to have the greatest profit, but the women remain at home.

The men honour the fair sex for their works, and because they have always a sufficiency of wealth. The state of the island is such, that no one dare approach it, to commit any injury, for whoever should attempt it would perish, as has

been frequently seen. For this cause, these ladies live in peace, without fear of any one: they are amiable, good-tempered, and without pride, and certainly, when they please, converse with fairies, and keep their company.

After the count de Nevers and his companions had amused themselves at this island for five days, they took leave of the ladies: the count made them such handsome presents, for their courteous treatment of them, that they were contented, and thanked him gratefully on his departure. When the lords were embarked, they put to sea, and favourable winds carried them to a territory called Ragnia, when they refreshed themselves again, and thence made for Clarence\*, which is one hundred miles distant from Venice. While the galleys were at anchor, and the lords in the town of Clarence, which belongs to the Venetians, they were known by a squire of honour and renown, from Hainault, called Bridoul de la Porte. He was a native of Mons, and had made, at his own expense, a pilgrimage, through devotion, to the Holy Sepulchre at Jerusalem, and had visited Cairo and St. Catherine's Mount.

The French lords had come to Clarence two days before him, and gave him a welcome reception, on hearing he was so good a man, and a native of Hainault, the country of the countess of Nevers, who was daughter to the earl of Hainault, and because they were all in countries distant from

---

\* Clarence, or Chiarenza, is in the Morea, opposite to Cephalonia.

their

their own. They asked him what parts he was last come from, and also concerning the affairs of king James of Cyprus, and respecting Turkey. He made no difficulty, but instantly gave prudent and intelligent answers. The barons of France, having reposed themselves, re-embarked, and made sail for Parenze \*. All large vessels and galleys which cannot, from want of water, land their cargoes at Venice, put into this port, for here the sea becomes shallow. The French knights made no long stay before they embarked in smaller vessels and arrived at Venice, where they were received with great joy. On their landing, they all returned thanks to God for their happy deliverance from the hands of the infidels, of which at one time they had despaired.

The count de Nevers and his companions went to the hotels which had been prepared for them; for, as their coming was known and expected for some time, their friends had sent servants and equipages to wait their arrival. The count found part of his attendants, whom the duke and duchess of Burgundy had sent thither, ready to receive him. Sir Dinde de Despoille had also been at Venice some time waiting for them with the amount of their ransom, for without his assistance, nothing could be done.

The French lords, on their arrival at Venice, instantly employed clerks and messengers to write and carry letters to France and elsewhere, to in-

---

\* Parenze. Q. Parenzo, a town on the coast of Istria, nearly opposite to Venice.

form their friends of their happy deliverance. This was very soon publicly known, to the joy of all who heard it.

The duke and duchess of Burgundy lost no time in preparing every thing suitable to the rank of their son the count de Nevers, such as gold and silver plate, linen, tapestry, clothes of all sorts, which were packed up on sumpter horses, and sent to Venice under the care of the lord de Hangiers\* and sir James de Helly. In like manner did all the friends and relatives of the other lords send them every necessary suitable to their rank. You may suppose all this was done at a great expence, for nothing was spared: their residence at Venice cost much, as it is one of the dearest towns in the world for strangers. It was proper these lords should keep up a state becoming their rank, which fell naturally most heavy on the count de Nevers, their commander in chief.

The duke and duchess of Burgundy were very active in procuring his ransom, that their son and heir might leave Venice with honour, and return to France and Flanders, where his presence was much wished for. The duke said, that were it not for the aid of his good subjects in Burgundy, Artois and Flanders, the money would never have been raised, for their own and their son's other expences were very great.

---

\* The lord de Hangiers. D. Sauvage supposes it ought to have been de Hangeft, for a family of that name existed in his time in Picardy.



The different negotiations and embassies had called for large sums, and, though the ransom was but two hundred thousand florins to Bajazet, yet the other costs and expenses amounted to as much more, as was declared by those through whose hands the money passed; and without this sum their liberty would never have been obtained.

It was matter of much consideration how this money was to be raised; for neither the duke nor duchess were inclined to abate any thing of their state, which was very magnificent. It was resolved by his council to lay a tax on all the towns under his obedience, more especially those of Flanders; for they abounded in wealth, from their commerce, and therefore the greater load was laid on them, that the count de Nevers might be at liberty to quit Venice.

When the matter was mentioned to the townsmen of Ghent, they readily declared their willingness to present their young lord fifty thousand florins to aid him in his ransom. Bruges, Mechlin, Antwerp, Ypres, Courtray, and the other towns in Flanders, expressed their readiness to assist in the ransom of the count de Nevers.

The duke and duchess of Burgundy were well pleased at these answers, and returned their warm acknowledgements to the magistrates of the different towns in Flanders, and to those of Artois and Burgundy, who had testified equally good inclinations.

The king of France was also very desirous of  
aiding

and, with the losses you all suffered at the disastrous battle of Nicopoli, will have made it difficult to you to procure a sufficiency for your ransoms. Our sovereign, therefore, dear sir, orders us to make you his excuses for not offering you, on this occasion, his assistance: if it were in his power, he would most cheerfully do it, for he conceives and declares he is bound to aid you, from his connection with you by blood and other causes; were it not that he and his subjects have had such losses by the late defeat, that you, who are a person of great understanding, will readily believe, and know the impossibility of his giving any aid at this present moment. The revenues of Hungary are ruined for this and the ensuing year, but whenever they are recovered, and the usual payments made, that he may be enabled to shew his offers are not mere empty words, he will assuredly come handsomely forward to your service.

‘That you may believe our most redoubted sovereign and your cousin is in earnest, we must acquaint you that he has ordered us to offer for sale to the rulers of Venice, the rents he receives from this town, which amount to seven thousand ducats yearly; and that whatever these may produce you are to dispose of as if it were your own; and for which we will sign receipts to the Venetians, having full authority so to do.’

The speech of the ambassadors from the king of Hungary was very agreeable to the French lords. They answered by the lord de Rochefort, who,

who, in the name of all, said, 'that they were very sensible of this mark of kindness from the king of Hungary, who, to oblige his cousin the count de Nevers, offered to sell his inheritance to aid them; that this was not an offer to be refused, nor the friendship and courtesy forgotten; that the count desired to have a little time to consider of his answer to the king.'

This was agreed to; and, within a few days, the ambassadors were told by the count de Nevers, that it would be very unbecoming him to pledge or sell the inheritance of another; but that, if it were agreeable to them who had such powers, to prevail on the Venetians to advance, on the security of these rents, a sufficient sum for the count de Nevers' daily expenses, and to enable him to acquit himself of the thirty thousand florins the grand prior of Aquitaine had lent him with so much generosity in the island of Rhodes, he should consider it as a great favour, and most kindly thank the king of Hungary and his council for so doing.'

The ambassadors cheerfully promised to make the proposal to the Venetians. When the Venetians heard it, they coldly replied they would deliberately consider of the matter, and demanded fifteen days to weigh their determination. When these were expired, they answered (as I was told by one who heard it), 'that if the king of Hungary were disposed to sell his whole kingdom, the Venetians would willingly make the purchase, and pay the money down; but as for such a trifle as  
seven

seven thousand ducats of yearly revenue which he possessed in the city of Venice, it was of so little value that they could not set a price on it either to buy or sell, and they would not trouble themselves about so small an object.'

Such was the answer made by the Venetians to the ambassadors of the king of Hungary. Some said, this reply was mere dissimulation, and that, though the Hungarians had made the offer to the count, they, in an underhand way, caused this answer to be given. Things, therefore, remained in the state they were in before, and the ambassadors took leave of the count de Nevers and those of his countrymen then with him, who were, Sir Reginald Pot, the lord de Rochefort and Sir William de la Trimouille. They left Venice, and returned to Hungary; but the French lords continued at Treviso on account of the great mortality that reigned in Venice.



## CHAP. II.

THE LORD LOUIS DE SANCERRE IS MADE CONSTABLE OF FRANCE IN THE ROOM OF THE COUNT D'EU, WHO HAD DIED IN TURKEY.—BOUCICAUT, DURING HIS ABSENCE WITH THE COUNT DE NEVERS, IS APPOINTED MARSHAL OF FRANCE IN THE PLACE OF THE LORD LOUIS DE SANCERRE.—THE FRENCH LORDS WHO HAD BEEN PRISONERS IN TURKEY RETURN TO FRANCE.

YOU have heard that the count d'Eu, constable of France, died in his bed at Burfa in Turkey, to the great regret of all his friends, more especially the king of France, who much loved him. The constableship became vacant by his death, and that office is of such weight that it must not long remain so. Councils were therefore held to appoint his successor, and the wiser among them nominated the lord Louis de Sancerre, in which they were confirmed by the majority in the kingdom. He had been a very long time marshal of France, and was so at the time of his election, residing in Languedoc. Being sent for by the king to Paris, he was invested with the office of constable, and by this vacated the charge of marshal; on which the king said, that he had already thought of a successor, for that no one should have it but his knight the lord Boucicaut. All the lords

agreed to the propriety of this choice, for indeed he was deserving of it, and when appointed was at Venice. He returned home shortly after this, for the ransoms were paid, and the whole of those who had been prisoners in Turkey came back to France, to the great joy of their friends and countrymen.

The lord Boucicaut was made marshal of France; and the count de Nevers waited on the duke and duchess of Burgundy, and was well feasted by them and others, for he was returned from a long and dangerous expedition, wherein he and his companions had suffered many perils, but through the grace of God, they had escaped, and were returned home. The count was seen with much pleasure by all in Flanders, Artois and Burgundy, and other dependancies of his father, as he was their heir apparent. After he had remained some time with the duke and duchess, and had visited the countries under their obedience, he determined to wait on the king of France and the duke of Orleans, both of whom received him honourably and kindly. He was made welcome by all the lords and ladies of the court. The king and the duke of Orleans were very glad to see him again, and eagerly listened to his relation of what he had suffered. They inquired news of Turkey, of the battle of Nicopoli, of the adventures he had met with, how he was made prisoner, and of the state of Bajazet?

The count satisfied them by his answers, for he was well spoken, and made no complaints, at least  
by

by speech, of the sultan, but said he had found him courteous and affable, even to those attached to his person; that he was very well treated; and he did not forget to tell the lords to whom he was speaking, that Bajazet, on his taking leave, to quit Turkey, had said, that he was born to bear arms, and make conquests in this world every year to a greater extent, and that he wished not to prevent his prisoners from again taking up arms against him, for he would with pleasure meet them in battle two, three, or four times if necessary; and that it was his intention to march to Rome, and feed his horse on the altar of Saint Peter. The count added, that the sultan thought our faith erroneous, and corrupted by those who ought to have kept its purity; and the Turks laughed and made their jokes at it. Many Saracens declare that Christianity, from the above cause, will be destroyed, and that the time is now come for its ruin; and that Bajazet was born to accomplish this, and be king over all the world.

‘Such was the language the interpreter translated to me; and, from what I saw and heard, I believe they are perfectly well acquainted in Turkey, Tartary, Persia, and throughout the whole of the infidels country, with our schisms in the church, and how the Christians are at difference, one with another, respecting the two popes of France and Italy; and the Saracens are wonderfully surprised how the kings of the different countries suffer it.’

This speech of the count de Nevers gave the king and lords of France enough to think on. Some said the Saracens were in the right to make their jokes and laugh, for priests were allowed to meddle too much in affairs that did not concern them; that it was time to lower their pomp, or force them to do it of themselves.

The young clergy, who were studying the Scriptures at the university of Paris, could not obtain any benefices from this schism in the church, and were not displeased that the people murmured against the popes. They rejoiced at what the count de Nevers had related, and that the Turks and Saracens made derision of our faith. 'In good truth,' they added, 'they are in the right to laugh at it, and, if the king of France and the emperor of Germany do not speedily attend to this schism, we foresee that church-affairs will daily become worse. All things considered, those who have been neuter between the two popes have acted wisely, and thus it behoves every one who wishes for union in the church.'

It was secretly told the king, by those who loved him and were desirous he should regain his health, that it was the common opinion throughout France he would never be perfectly recovered until the church were properly regulated. They added, that his father, king Charles of happy memory, had, on his death-bed, charged his council with this matter; that he suspected he had been deceived by these popes, and had made his determination too soon, for which he felt his conscience



science was loaded. He excused himself, saying, — ‘ When our lord and father died, we were very young. We have followed the counsel of those who have hitherto governed, and if we have acted wrong or foolishly, it has been their fault, and not ours ; but, since we have had fuller information, we will soon attend to the business, and in such a manner that the effect shall be apparent.’

The king of France paid more attention to this matter than he had ever done before, and promised himself and his council that he would provide a remedy. He spoke of it to his brother, the duke of Orleans, who inclined instantly to his opinion, as did the duke of Burgundy, for, notwithstanding he had acknowledged the pope, who stiled himself Clement, he had no great faith in him : the prelates of France, particularly Guy de Roye, archbishop of Rheims, the archbishops of Sens, of Rouen, and the bishop of Autun, had induced him to acknowledge Clement.

It was determined in a private council, that, if an union of the church were sought for, it was necessary to have the assent of Germany. Learned men were therefore sent as ambassadors to the king of Bohemia and Germany, who stiled himself king of the Romans. Master Philip des Playes was one of these ambassadors, who had instructions to prevail on the king of Germany to meet the king of France in the city of Rheims ; and that no prelates, cardinals, archbishops or bishops, might any way interrupt this meeting, or interfere with the object, it was published that the

cause for the two monarchs, with their councils, coming to Rheims, was to treat of a marriage between a son of the marquis of Brandenburgh, brother to the emperor, and a daughter of the duke of Orleans, and under cover of this they could treat of other matters.

During the time these negotiations were going forward, the lord Guy de Châtillon, count de Blois, departed this life in his hôtel at Avesnes in Hainault. He was carried to Valenciennes and buried in the church of the Franciscans, in a chapel called the Chapel of Artois. True it is, that he had made a large inclosure for the Franciscans, and intended erecting his tomb within it; but he died so much in debt that his countess, the lady Mary of Namur, was obliged to renounce all claim to his moveables. She dared not act under his will, but retired to her dowry of the lands of Chimay and Beaumont, and the estates went to their right heirs. The duke of Orleans had the county of Blois, for which, during the late count's life, he had paid him two hundred thousand crowns of France. The lands in Hainault, Holland, and Zealand, went to duke Albert of Bavaria: those of Avesnes, Landrecies and Louvion in Tierache, fell to John of Blois, more commonly called John of Brittany, to whom, if count Guy had not sold it, the county of Blois would have devolved as to its right heir. Observe what mischief a lord may do his heir by listening to bad advice\*. [I make

---

\* All between the erotchetis from the MSS. in the B. Museum and at Hafod, but not in the printed copies.

mention of it because the count Guy de Blois was very anxious, during his life, that I, sir John Froissart, should indite this history; and he was at great expenses to forward it, for so considerable an undertaking cannot be accomplished without heavy charges. May God receive his soul! He was my lord and patron, of high honour and great renown, and had no need to make the pitiful bargains he did in the sale of his estates; but he too readily believed those who advised him to dishonourable and profitless acts. The lord de Coucy, who died at Burfa, was very culpable in this business.] We will now return to the affairs of England.

---

### CHAP. III.

THE DEATHS OF THE DUKE OF GLOCESTER  
AND THE EARL OF ARUNDEL.—THE MANNER  
IN WHICH THE DUKES OF LANCASTER AND  
YORK, AND THE LONDONERS, TAKE THE  
MATTER.

YOU have before seen, in the course of this history, that king Richard of England would not longer conceal the great hatred he bore his uncle of Glocester, but had determined to have him cut off, according to the advice given him, setting it forth to be more adviseable to destroy

than be destroyed. You have likewise heard how the king had rode to the castle of Pleshy, thirty miles from London, and with fair words had cajoled the duke out of his castle, and was accompanied by him to a lane that led to the Thames, where they arrived between ten and eleven o'clock at night; and how the earl marshal, who there lay in ambush, had arrested him in the king's name, and forced him towards the Thames, in spite of his cries to the king to deliver him. He was conscious, that from the moment of his being thus arrested, his end was resolved on, and it was confirmed to him by the king turning a deaf ear to his complaints, and riding on full gallop to London, where he lodged that night in the Tower.

The duke of Gloucester had other lodgings; for, whether he would or not, he was forced into a boat that carried him to a vessel at anchor on the Thames, into which he was obliged to enter. The earl marshal embarked also with his men, and, having a favourable wind and tide, they fell down the river, and arrived, late on the morrow evening, at Calais, without any one knowing of it except the king's officers. [The earl marshal, as governor, could enter Calais at all hours, without any one thinking it extraordinary: he carried the duke to the castle, wherein he confined him.]

You may suppose, that when news was carried to Pleshy of the duke of Gloucester's arrest, the duchess and her children were greatly dismayed, and,



and, since such a bold measure had been taken, were much afraid of the consequences. Suspecting the duke's life was in great danger, they consulted fir John Laquingay what would be best for them now to do. The knight advised them to send instantly to the dukes of Lancaster and York, the duke's brothers; for by their mediation, perhaps, the king's choler would be appeased. He saw no other means, as the king would not choose to make them his enemies.

The duchess of Glocester followed this advice of the knight, and instantly dispatched messengers to both, for they resided at a distance from each other. They were much enraged at hearing their brother was arrested, and returned answers to the duchess, not to be too much distressed at what had happened, for the king would not dare to treat him otherwise than by fair and legal measures, for it would not be suffered. This answer comforted the duchess and her children.

The king of England left the Tower of London at a very early hour, and rode to Eltham, where he remained. The same day, towards evening, the earls of Arundel and Warwick were brought to the Tower by the king's officers, and there confined, to the great surprise of the citizens. Their imprisonment caused many to murmur, but they were afraid to act, or do any thing against the king's pleasure, lest they might suffer for it. It was the common conversation of the knights, squires, and citizens of London, and in other towns,—‘It is useles for us to say more on this matter,

matter, for the dukes of Lancaster and of York, brothers to the duke of Gloucester, can provide a remedy for all this whenever they please: they assuredly would have prevented it from happening, if they had suspected the king had so much courage, or that he would have arrested their brother; but they will repent of their indolence: and, if they are not instantly active, it will end badly.

When the duke of Gloucester saw himself confined in the castle of Calais, abandoned by his brothers, and deprived of his attendants, he began to be much alarmed. He addressed himself to the earl marshal, 'For what reason am I thus carried from England and confined here? It seems that you mean to imprison me. Let me go and view the castle, its garrison, and the people of the town.' 'My lord,' replied the earl, 'I dare not comply with your demands, for you are consigned to my guard, under pain of death. The king our lord is at this moment somewhat wroth with you; and it is his orders that you abide here a while, in banishment with us, which you must have patience to do, until we have other news, and God grant that it may be soon! for, as the Lord may help me, I am truly concerned for your disgrace, and would cheerfully aid you if I could, but you know the oath I have taken to the king, which I am bound in honour to obey.'

The duke of Gloucester could not obtain any other answer. He judged, from appearances of things around him, that he was in danger of his life, and asked a priest who had said mass, if he  
would

would-confess him. This he did, with great calmness and resignation, and with a devout and contrite heart cried before the altar of God, the Creator of all things, for his mercy. He was repentant of all his sins, and lamented them greatly. He was in the right thus to exonerate his conscience, for his end was nearer than he imagined. I was informed, that on the point of his sitting down to dinner, when the tables were laid, and he was about to wash his hands, four men rushed out from an adjoining chamber, and, throwing a towel round his neck, strangled him, by two drawing one end and two the other. When he was quite dead, they carried him to his chamber, undressed him, and placed the body between two sheets, with his head on a pillow, and covered him with furred mantles.

They then re-entered the hall, properly instructed what to say and how to act, and declared the duke of Gloucester had been seized with a fit of apoplexy as he was washing his hands before dinner, and that they had great difficulty to carry him to bed. This was spoken of in the castle and town, where some believed it, but others not. Within two days after, it was published abroad that the duke of Gloucester had died in his bed at the castle of Calais; and, in consequence, the earl marshal put on mourning, for he was nearly related to him, as did all the knights and squires in Calais.

News of this event was sooner known in France and Flanders than in England. The French rejoiced

joiced much at it; for it was commonly reported that there would never be any solid peace between France and England as long as the duke of Gloucester lived; and it was well remembered, that in the negotiations for peace he was more obstinate in his opinions than either of his brothers; and, for this reason, his death was no loss to France.

In like manner, many knights and squires of the king of England's household, who were afraid of him, for his severe and rough manners, were pleased at his death. They recounted how he had driven the duke of Ireland to banishment, and had ignominiously beheaded that prudent and gallant knight sir Simon Burley, who had been so much beloved by the prince of Wales, and had done essential services to his country. The deaths of sir Robert Trevilian, sir Nicholas Frambre, sir John Standwich and others, were not forgotten, so that the duke of Gloucester was but little lamented in England, except by those who were of his party and manner of thinking.

The duke's body was honourably embalmed at Calais, and put into a leaden coffin, with an outward one of wood, and transported in this state by sea to England. The vessel that carried the body landed at Hadleigh castle, on the Thames, and thence it was conveyed on a car, unattended, to his castle of Plisby, and placed in the church which the duke had founded in honour of the Holy Trinity, with twelve canons to perform devoutly the divine service. In this church was the duke buried.

The



The duchess of Gloucester, her son Humphrey, and her two daughters, were sorely grieved when the body of the duke arrived. The duchess had double cause of affliction, for the earl of Arundel, her uncle, had been publicly beheaded in Cheapside by orders of the king. No baron nor knight dared to interpose, nor advise the king to do otherwise, for he was himself present at the execution, which was performed by the earl's son-in-law, the earl marshal, who bandaged his eyes.

The earl of Warwick ran great risk of suffering the same death, but the earl of Salisbury, who was in favour with the king, interceded for him, as did many other barons and prelates. The king listened to their solicitations, on condition he were sent to a place he could not leave, for he would never absolutely pardon him, as he was deserving death, for having joined the duke of Gloucester and the earl of Arundel in their attempts to annul the truce which had been signed and sealed by the kings of France and England, for themselves and allies. This alone was a crime to be punished by an ignominious death: for the conditions of the treaties were, that whoever should break or infringe them was to be so punished.

The earl of Salisbury was very earnest in his supplications for the earl of Warwick. They had been brothers in arms ever since their youth; and he excused him on account of his great age, and of his being deceived by the fair speeches of the duke of Gloucester and the earl of Arundel: that what had been done was not from his instigation,  
but

but solely by that of others; and the house of Beauchamp, of which the earl of Warwick was the head, never imagined treason against the crown of England. The earl of Warwick was, therefore, through pity, respited from death, but banished to the isle of Wight, which is a dependancy on England. He was told,—‘Earl of Warwick, this sentence is very favourable, for you have deserved to die as much as the earl of Arundel, but the handsome services you have done in times past, to king Edward of happy memory, and the prince of Wales his son, as well on this as on the other side of the sea, have secured your life; but it is ordered that you banish yourself to the isle of Wight, taking with you a sufficiency of wealth to support your state as long as you shall live, and that you never quit the island.’

The earl of Warwick was not displeased with this sentence, since his life was spared, and, having thanked the king and council for their lenity, made no delay in his preparations to surrender himself in the isle of Wight on the appointed day, which he did with part of his household. The isle of Wight is situated opposite the coast of Normandy, and has space enough for the residence of a great lord, but he must provide himself with all that he may want from the circumjacent countries, or he will be badly supplied with provision and other things.

Thus were affairs carried on in England, and daily going from bad to worse, as you will find ~~in related~~. When the dukes of Lancaster and York

York heard of their brother's death at Calais, they instantly suspected the king their nephew was guilty of it. At the time, they were not together, but each at his country seat, according to the custom in England. They wrote to each other to consult how they should act on the occasion, and hastened to London because they knew the citizens were very angry at the event. On their arrival, they had several meetings, and declared that the putting the duke of Gloucester to death for some foolish words ought not to be passed over in silence, nor borne; for, although he had warmly opposed the treaty with France, he had not acted upon it; that there was an essential difference between talking and acting, and that words alone did not deserve the severe punishment he had suffered, and that this matter must be inquired into and amended.

The two brothers were in a situation to have thrown England into confusion, for there were enow who would have supported them, more especially all the kindred of the late earl of Arundel, which is a powerful family in England, and the family of the earl of Stafford.

The king at this time resided at Eltham, whither he had summoned all his vassals and dependants. He had collected round London, in the counties of Kent and Essex, upwards of ten thousand archers. and had with him his brother sir John Holland, the earl marshal, the earl of Salisbury, with many other great barons and knights. The king sent orders to the citizens of London not to admit the duke of Lancaster within their walls; but they replied,

plied, they knew of no reason why they should refuse him admittance, and the duke resided there with his son the earl of Derby, as did the duke of York with his son the earl of Rutland. The king loved the earl of Rutland and the earl marshal beyond measure: the first dissembled his opinions concerning the death of the duke of Gloucester, and would willingly have seen peace restored on both sides. He said, that his late uncle had on several occasions treated the king very unbecomingly. The Londoners considered also, that great mischiefs might befall England from these dissensions between the king, his uncles, and their supporters; that, since the duke of Gloucester was now dead, it could not be helped; and that he, in some measure, had been the cause of it, by his too great freedom of speech, and from his attempts to excite the people of England to break the truces that had been signed between France and England. The citizens, therefore, prudently dissembled their thoughts; and, as what was done could not now be undone, they feared, should matters be pushed to extremities, they might suffer very considerably in their commerce from the king of France.

The resentments of the citizens began to cool, and they offered to mediate between the king and the duke of Lancaster, who was mightily angered by the murder of his brother. He be-  
 thought himself, however, that as his nephew was  
 married to the daughter of the king of France,  
 should he wage war against king Richard, his two  
 daughters married in Castille and Portugal might  
 suffer

suffer for it, from the French carrying a war into those countries. The duke was beside forced to change his mind, whether he would or not, from the solicitations of the citizens of London and some of the English prelates, who had been the mediators between the king and his uncles. The king obtained peace, on promising from that day forward to be solely guided by the advice of the duke of Lancaster, engaging never to do any thing without first consulting him. The promise, however, he paid not any regard to, but followed the councils of the rash and evil minded, for which hereafter he severely suffered, as shall be related in this history.

Thus did the king of England gain peace from his uncles for the murder of the duke of Gloucester, and now governed more fiercely than before. He went with his state to Pleshy in Essex, which had belonged to his uncle of Gloucester, and should have descended to his son Humphrey as heir to his father; but the king took possession of it, for it is the rule in England for the king to have the wardship of all children who have lost their fathers, and are under twenty-one years of age, at which period their estates are restored to them. King Richard took his cousin Humphrey of Gloucester in ward, appropriating all his possessions to his own profit. He made him live with him, and the duchess and her two daughters with the queen.

The late duke of Gloucester was by inheritance constable of England; but the king deprived his heir of it, and gave it his cousin the earl of Rut-

land. The king now assumed a greater state than ever king of England had done before, nor had there been any one who had expended such large sums by one hundred thousand nobles. He also took the wardship of the heir of Arundel, son to the late earl whom he had beheaded in London, as has been related, and forced him to live with him. And because one of the knights of the late duke of Gloucester, named Cerbec\*, had spoken too freely of the king and council, he was arrested and instantly beheaded. Sir John Lacquingay was likewise in some peril; but, when he saw the turn affairs had taken, he quitted the service of the duchess of Gloucester, and fixed his abode elsewhere.

At this period there was no one, however great in England, that dared speak his sentiments of what the king did or intended doing. He had formed a council of his own from the knights of his chamber, who encouraged him to act as they advised. The king had in his pay full two thousand archers, who were on guard day and night, for he did not think himself perfectly safe from his uncles or the Arundel family†.

---

\* Cerbec. It is Cerber and Cerbel.

† For more ample particulars respecting the murder of the duke of Gloucester, I must refer the reader to Mr. Gough's history of Pleshy.

## CHAP. IV.

A GREAT ASSEMBLY HOLDEN AT RHEIMS, BY  
THE EMPEROR OF GERMANY AND KING OF  
FRANCE, ON THE SCHISM IN THE CHURCH,  
AND ON THE MEANS OF UNITING THE TWO  
PARTIES.

AT this period, there was a numerous assembly of great lords in the city of Rheims, as well from the empire of Germany as from France, whose object was to restore union to the church. At the solicitation of the king of France, the emperor had come thither in person, attended by his ministers; but because they wished it not to be publicly known that this meeting was to consider of the rivalry of the two popes of Rome and of Avignon, they had it rumoured, that the lords of the empire came to Rheims to treat of a marriage between a son of the marquis of Brandenburg, brother to the emperor, and a daughter of the duke of Orleans.

The king of France was lodged in the archbishop's palace, as were the dukes of Orleans, Berry, Burgundy, and count de Saint Pol, with other barons and prelates of France. When the emperor was about to make his entry into Rheims, all these lords and prelates, with Charles king of Navarre, went to meet him: after receiving

him most honourably, they conducted him first to the church of our Lady, and then to the abbey of Saint Remy, where he was lodged with all his lords. His attendants, and the others who had accompanied him, were placed as near to him as was possible; and the king of France had ordered, that all the expenses of the emperor and Germans, during their residence in Rheims, should be paid by his officers in the most ample manner. In consequence, there were daily delivered to the Germans ten tons of herrings, for it was Lent, and eight hundred carp, without counting different sorts of fish and other things, which cost the king immense sums.

When the emperor paid his first visit to the king of France, the great lords before mentioned went to seek him at the abbey of Saint Remy, and conducted him in great state to the palace. On the two monarchs meeting, they paid many compliments to each other, as they knew well how to do, especially the king of France, for the Germans are a rude unmannered race, except in what regards their personal advantage, and in this they are active and expert enough. The lords of both countries, who were present, made acquaintance together with many outward signs of satisfaction: and the king of France entertained the whole at dinner, of which I will mention some particulars.

At the top of the king's table was seated the patriarch of Jerusalem: next to him, the emperor, then the king of France and the king of Navarre: no more were at this table. At the others were  
seated



feated the lords from Germany; and they were waited on by the lords of France, for none of them sat down. The dukes of Berry, Bourbon, and the count de St. Pol, with other great barons, placed the dishes, and served the king's table. The duke of Orleans supplied the company with such quantities of plates of gold and silver as though they had been made of wood. The dinner was splendid, and abundantly well served, and deserving of remembrance. I was told that the king made a present to the emperor of all the gold and silver plate that was used, as well as what was on the side-board, with all the tapestry and ornaments of the apartment, whither the emperor retired after dinner to partake of wine and spices. This gift was estimated at two hundred thousand florins; and the other Germans were presented with magnificent gifts of gold and silver plate.

The Germans, and other strangers who had come thither to view the feast, greatly wondered at the wealth and power of France.

During the residence of these monarchs at Rheims, their ministers frequently met to consider of the marriage of the marquis of Brandenburg, and the reformation of the church. The marriage was agreed on, and published in Rheims, but their consultations and resolutions, concerning the church, were kept secret: what I shall say on the subject came to my knowledge afterward.

It was determined that Peter d'Ailly, bishop of Cambray, should be sent as ambassador from the

emperor and the king of France to the person who stiled himself pope Boniface at Rome, and negotiate with him in their names with the view of inducing him to submit to a new election; should the choice again fall on him, he would be acknowledged by them as pope, but, if not, then he was to resign. The bishop was to declare the same to the pope of Avignon; adding that, if either of the popes refused to comply with this disposition of the two monarchs, they would be degraded, and every honour and profit of the church taken from them; that in this the kings of England, Scotland, Castille, Portugal and Navarre had joined. The emperor said he would answer for his brother the king of Hungary, and all Bohemia and Germany, as far as Prussia, being of the same sentiment. The monarchs likewise declared, that, on the bishop's return from his embassy, they would exert themselves, with their friends and allies, that what they had now agreed on should be executed without any variation. Thus ended this meeting: the two monarchs separated most amicably, and each returned to his usual place of residence.

The duke of Burgundy refused to attend at Rheims; for he said it would not answer any purpose, and that whatever might be given to the Germans, they would never keep the engagements they should enter into. However, notwithstanding this speech of the duke, nothing was left undone, and matters were concluded as you have heard. Peter d'Ailly, bishop of Cambray, was not

not long in making preparations for his journey, and set out on his embassy to Rome and Avignon, to declare the engagements the emperor and king of France had entered into. The king of France sent ambassadors to his son-in-law, the king of England, to acquaint him with what had been done, that he might unite in the same opinion. King Richard received the ambassadors with joy: and when he learnt the object of their mission, which was to entreat he would remain neuter, if he could not prevail on his subjects to unite with France and Germany, in case the two popes refused compliance, replied he would so manage that his kingdom should act in the matter as he pleased. This he instantly promised, to the great joy of the ambassadors.

After they had staid with the king and queen of England as long as they had chosen, they took leave and returned to Paris by Boulogne, and related all that had passed to the king and council. This was very agreeable to the king, and affairs remained in this state some time.

The king of Navarre came to Paris to visit the king of France, and thought he might perhaps recover his inheritance of Evreux in Normandy, which the king of France had seized from his father, as has been related in this history; but, in spite of every attempt, he was unsuccessful. The king of Navarre, seeing he laboured in vain, took the matter in great displeasure, and abruptly left the court of France, discontented with the king and his ministers, and returned to Navarre.

We will now leave the affairs of Germany, France and Navarre, to speak of what befel England, whence sprung such melancholy events as have not been recorded in this history, and which my readers will allow when they come to the detail of them.

---

## CHAP. V.

THE EARL MARSHAL CHALLENGES THE EARL OF DERBY, SON TO THE DUKE OF LANCASTER, IN THE PRESENCE OF THE KING AND HIS COUNCIL.

**K**ING Richard of England was of a temper that, when he took a liking to any one, he instantly raised him to high honours, and had such confidence in him that no one dared to say any thing to his prejudice. At the same time, there had not been a king of England in the memory of man who so easily believed all that was told him. His favourites, however, paid no attention to the miserable fate of many of their predecessors; how the duke of Ireland had been banished, sir Simon Burley, sir Robert Tresilian, sir Nicholas Brambre and others had lost their lives, for counsels they had given the king, and for which the duke of Gloucester had taken great pains in their destruction. The duke was now dead, and the favourites  
of

of the moment, who continually counselled the king as they pleased, were not sorry, for they imagined no one would now pretend to oppose them.

Some about the king's person could not disguise their pride and presumption, especially the earl marshal, who was in the highest degree of favour. To flatter and please the king, and to shew how true and loyal a servant he was, whenever he heard any reports he told them to the king, expecting from such means to rise still higher in favour; but many, thinking to advance, are repulsed. Thus it happened to the earl marshal.

You must know that the earl of Derby and the late duke of Gloucester had married two sisters, daughters to the earl of Hereford and Northampton, constable of England: the children, therefore, of the earl of Derby and duke of Gloucester were cousins-german by their mother's side, and one degree removed by their father's. To say the truth, the death of the duke of Gloucester had displeased many of the great barons of England, who frequently murmured at it when together; but the king had now so greatly extended his power, none dared speak of it openly, nor act upon the current rumours of the mode of his death. The king had caused it to be proclaimed, that whoever should say any thing respecting the duke of Gloucester or the earl of Arundel should be reckoned a false and wicked traitor, and incur his indignation. This threat had caused many to  
be

be silent, afraid of what might befall them, who were, nevertheless, much dissatisfied.

At this time, a conversation passed between the earl of Derby and the earl marshal, in which the state of the king and the counsellors whom he trusted became the subject of discussion. The earl marshal caught at the following words the other had made use of, with a good intent, thinking they would never have been mentioned again, for they were neither arrogant nor traitorous: 'Holy Mary! fair cousin, what does the king next intend to do? Will he drive all the nobles out of England? There will soon be none left; and he plainly shews he is not desirous to add to the honour of his realm.'

The earl marshal made no reply, but treasured this speech in his mind, as he considered it very impertinent, in regard to the king, and thought within himself that the earl of Derby was well inclined to excite troubles in England, for he was marvellously beloved by the Londoners. He therefore determined (for the devil entered his brain, and what has been ordained to happen must come to pass) to report this speech in the presence of the king and his nobility.

Soon after this conversation, the earl marshal, to flatter and gain favour with the king, said,—  
 ['My lord, all your enemies and ill-wishers are not dead, nor out of the kingdom.' The king changed colour, and replied, 'How, cousin, do you say this?' 'I know it well,' answered the earl marshal, 'at the present moment, I will not say more;

more ; but, that you may provide a remedy in time, have it proclaimed that you will hold a solemn feast on this ensuing palm-Sunday, and invite all the princes of your blood, particularly the earl of Derby, when you shall hear something that will surprise you, and what you are not suspicious of, notwithstanding it so nearly concerns you.'

The king was very pensive on hearing this, and begged the earl marshal to give him further information ; that he might safely tell him all, for he would keep it secret. I know not if he did so ; but the king, if he did, kept it to himself, and allowed the earl to act in the matter as he pleased ; the consequences of which were as follows.

The king had it proclaimed that he would hold a solemn feast at his palace of Eltham on palm Sunday, and sent particular invitations to the dukes of Lancaster and York and their children, who, not suspecting any mischief, came thither.

When the day of the feast was arrived, and all the lords had retired after dinner with the king to his council-chamber, the earl marshal, having settled in his own mind how to act and what to say, cast himself on his knees before the king, and thus addressed him :] ' Very dear and renowned lord, I am of your kindred, your liege man and marshal of England ; and I have beside sworn on my loyalty, my hand within yours, that I would never conceal from you any thing I might hear or see to your prejudice, on pain of being accounted a disloyal traitor. This I am resolved  
never

never to be, but to acquit myself before you and all the world.'

The king, fixing his eyes on him, asked, 'Earl marshal, what is your meaning in saying thus? We will know it.' 'Very dear lord,' replied the earl, 'as I have declared, I will not keep any secret from you: order the earl of Derby to come to your presence, and I will speak out.' The earl of Derby was called for, and the king made the earl marshal rise, for he addressed him on his knees. On the earl of Derby's arrival, who thought no harm, the earl marshal spoke as follows: 'Earl of Derby, I charge you with having thought and spoke disrespectfully against your natural lord the king of England, when you said he was unworthy to hold his crown: that without law or justice, or consulting his council, he disturbed the realm; and that, without any shadow of reason, he banished those valiant men from his kingdom who ought to be its defenders, for all of which I present my glove, and shall prove, my body against yours, that you are a false and wicked traitor.'

The earl of Derby was confounded at this address, and retired a few paces, without demanding from the duke his father, or any of his friends, how he should act. Having mused a while, he advanced, with his hood in his hand, towards the king, and said, 'Earl marshal, I say that thou art a false and wicked traitor, which I will bodily prove on thee, and here is my glove.'

The



The earl marshal, seeing his challenge was accepted, shewed a good desire for the combat, by taking up the glove and saying,—‘ I refer your answer to the good pleasure of the king and the lords now present. I will prove that what you have said is false, and that my words are true.’

Each of these lords then withdrew with his friends, and the time for serving wine and spices was passed by; for the king shewed he was sore displeased, and retired to his chamber and shut himself within it. His two uncles remained without with their children, as did the earl of Salisbury and Huntingdon, the king’s brother.

Soon afterward, the king called to him his uncles, and demanded from them how he was to act on this occasion. ‘ Sire, order your constable hither, and we will tell you.’ The earl of Rutland, constable of England, being sent for, came, and he was told,—‘ Constable, go to the earl of Derby and the earl marshal, and oblige them to promise not to quit the kingdom without the king’s permission.’ The constable obeyed the order, and returned to the king’s apartment. You may believe the whole court was greatly troubled by this event, and many barons and knights were much displeased, who blamed the earl marshal for his conduct; but what he had said he could not now retract, and he shewed by his manners that he made light of it, so arrogant and swollen with pride was his heart. The lords now separated, each for his own home. The duke of Lancaster, in spite of appearances, was much  
vexed

vexed at what had passed, and his opinion was, that the king should not have listened to such a charge, but instantly have annihilated it; and in this he was joined by the more sensible barons of the country.

The earl of Derby resided in London, for he had his house there, and kept up his state. The duke of Lancaster, the duke of York, the earl of Northumberland, and many other great lords, for he was much beloved, were his securities to appear and answer the challenge. The earl marshal was sent to the Tower of London, where he lived with his household. These two lords made ample provision of all things necessary for the combat; and the earl of Derby sent off messengers to Lombardy to have armour from sir Galeas, duke of Milan. The duke complied with joy, and gave the knight, called sir Francis, who had brought the message, the choice of all his armour for the earl of Derby. When he had selected what he wished for in plated and mail armour, the lord of Milan, out of his abundant love to the earl, ordered four of the best armourers in Milan to accompany the knight to England, that the earl of Derby might be more completely armed.

The earl marshal, on the other hand, sent into Germany, whence he thought he should be ably assisted by his friends. Each provided himself most magnificently, to outshine the other; but the greater splendour was shewn by the earl of Derby, for I must say that, when the earl marshal undertook

undertook this business, he expected to have been better supported than he was by the king. It was hinted to the king, by those near his person,—‘Sire, you have no occasion to interfere further in this matter: dissemble your thoughts, and leave them to themselves: they are fully capable of managing it. The earl of Derby is wondrous popular in the kingdom, but more especially in London; and, should the citizens perceive that you take part with the earl marshal against the earl of Derby, you will irrecoverably lose their affection.’

The king attended to this advice, for he knew it was true: in consequence, he dissembled his opinion, and suffered each to provide for himself. The news of this combat between the earl of Derby and the earl marshal made a great noise in foreign parts: for it was to be for life or death, and before the king and great barons of England. It was spoken of differently: some said, particularly in France,—‘Let them fight it out: these English knights are too arrogant, and in a short time will cut each other’s throats. They are the most perverse nation under the sun, and their island is inhabited by the proudest people.’ But others, more wise, said,—‘The king of England does not shew great sense, nor that he is well advised, when for foolish words, undeserving serious notice, he permits two such valiant and noble lords, and of his kindred, thus to engage in mortal combat. He ought, according to the opinions of many wise men, to have said, when he first heard

heard this charge,—‘ You earl of Derby, and you earl marshal, are my near relations: I command, therefore, that you harbour no hatred nor malevolence against each other, but live like friends and cousins as you are. Should your stay in this country become tiresome, travel into foreign parts, to Hungary or elsewhere, and seek for deeds of arms and adventures.’ If the king of England had done so, or come forward to prevent this combat, he would have acted wisely, according to the opinions of men of sense and prudence.’

The duke of Lancaster was much vexed and melancholy at seeing the king of England, his nephew, thus badly conduct himself, but knew not to whom to open his thoughts. He, like a wise man, considered the consequences that might ensue, and at times said to those he most confided in,—‘ Our nephew will ruin every thing before he have done: he too readily listens to evil counsellors, who will destroy him and his kingdom. Should he live long, he will lose by little and little all it has cost his predecessors and us so much pains to gain. He encourages discord between his nobles and great lords, by whom he ought to be honoured and served, and the country guarded. He has put my brother to death, for it is now notorious he ordered it, and likewise the earl of Arundel, because they told him the truth; but this he refuses to hear, and will not listen to any one who does not flatter his own imaginations. He cannot sooner ruin his country than by ex-  
 \* his nobility and principal towns.

towns. The French are too subtle a race, for one misfortune that befalls us they would wish ten, as they can never obtain their ends, or recover their domains, but through ourselves; and every day there are examples of the misery of kingdoms when divided. Such has been the unfortunate lot of France, Castille, Naples, and the Roman state; and the present schism is the ruin of the contending popes, as well as the church. Flanders is another example which we have seen of self-destruction. Friesland is at this moment in a similar state, oppressed by the war of the count of Hainault, and ruining themselves by domestic quarrels. We shall be in the same situation unless God prevent it, from the appearance of the present state of affairs. The king has consented that my son and heir, for I have none other by my two first marriages, should be challenged to mortal combat for a mere trifle; and I, his father, dare not say a word against it, in regard to my own and my son's honour; for my son has the feelings of a knight, and is of sufficient strength to encounter the earl marshal. Howbeit, let the best be made of it, they will never again love each other as they did before.

Such were the conversations of the duke of Lancaster. The two earls, in the mean time, were making every preparation for their combat. The duke of Lancaster never went near the king, and as seldom saw his son, acting throughout with great good sense. He knew the earl of Derby was very popular with all ranks in England, but

more particularly with the Londoners, who waited on him, and addressed him,—‘ Earl of Derby, make your mind easy : whatever may be the event of this combat it will turn out to your honour, in spite of the king and all his minions. We know well how things are managed, and what will be the result of them : this accusation has been invented by envy, to cause your banishment out of the kingdom, where they are aware you are so greatly beloved by all ranks and sexes ; and, should you be forced to quit us in sorrow, you shall return in joy, for you are more worthy to rule than Richard of Bordeaux. Whoever may choose to search the matter to the bottom, to discover the real origin of you both, will soon see that you have a greater right to the crown of England than he who wears it, although we have paid him homage, and acknowledged him for king these twenty years ; but that was obtained by the entreaties of your grandfather, king Edward of happy memory, who was suspicious of what we hint, and feared the consequences. There was once a serious dispute on this subject between king Edward and your grandfather by your mother’s side, duke Henry of Lancaster, but the great lords interfered and made up matters between them. King Edward was valiant and successful in all his enterprises, and had gained the love of his subjects high and low. Your grandfather of Lancaster only required from the king what was just, and served him and his kingdom so loyally, that his conduct deserved the commendation of all.

Every



Every one who knew him called him their old father. These things are worthy of king Richard's consideration, and may make him repent, if any thing can, at his leisure, that he has not more prudently governed.'

Such conversations did many of the nobles and citizens of London hold with the earl of Derby, who was pleased with their affection, and received them kindly. He did not, however, neglect any preparations for his combat, but sent to every one of his friends throughout England, to entreat their company at the appointed day and place.

King Richard, notwithstanding he had suffered this challenge and appeal to arms to be made in his presence, was uncertain how to act, and whether to allow the combat to take place or not. And, although he was the king of England the most feared of any who had worn the crown, he was guarded day and night by two thousand archers, who were regularly paid weekly, and had confidence only in his brother the earl of Huntingdon, and the earls of Salisbury and Rutland, his cousin, who were highly in his favour. He paid no regard to others, except a few of the knights of his chamber, who were his advisers.

When the day for the combat was approaching, and the two lords had made their preparations, waiting only for the king's commands, king Richard's secret advisers asked, 'Sire, what is your intention respecting this combat between your two cousins, the earl of Derby and the earl marshal? Will you permit them to proceed?' 'Yes,' replied



plied the king: 'why not? I intend to be present myself and to see their prowess. We may perhaps learn, from the issue of this combat, what we are now ignorant of, although it may be very important for us to know, that we may provide accordingly; for there is no one so great in England, but, if he anger me, he shall dearly pay for it. Should I allow myself to be any way governed by my subjects they would soon overpower me: I know for certain that some of my kinsmen have held secret meetings respecting my government; but the most dangerous among them was the duke of Gloucester, for in all England there was none more wrong-headed. He is now at peace, and henceforward we shall manage the rest well enough. But tell me, I pray you, why you ask the question?'

'Sire,' replied they, 'we are bound to advise you to the best of our knowledge and abilities. We sometimes hear and observe what you cannot, for you are in your apartments, and we abroad in the fields, or in London, where many conversations are held that nearly touch you, as well as us. There is yet time to provide a remedy, and we earnestly advise you not to delay it.'

'What do you mean?' said the king: 'speak out, and do not spare me; for I wish to act rightly, and to maintain justice in my kingdom.'

'Sire, the common report throughout England, but especially in London, is, that you are cause of this combat, and that you have induced

duced the earl marshal to challenge the earl of Derby. The Londoners in general, and many of the prelates and nobles, say, that you are in the direct road to destroy all your kindred and kingdom, but that they will not suffer it to be done. Now, were the citizens to rise and be joined by the nobility, who could oppose them? You have no power but from your vassals; and they are now more suspicious of you than ever, from your marriage with a princess of France; and you are less beloved by your subjects on this account. Know, that if you allow these two earls to meet in arms, you will not be lord of the field, but the Londoners, united with the earl of Derby's great connections by blood, who are all much attached to him. The earl marshal is become very unpopular, particularly with the citizens of London, who would willingly put him to death. Three parts of the people of England say, that when you heard the charge of the earl marshal, you should have acted otherwise than you did, and checked the quarrel by telling them, 'You are both my cousins and liege men, and I command that peace be henceforward between you;' and that you should have taken the earl of Derby by the hand, and led him to your chamber with every token of affection. Because you did not this, the common report is, that you warmly take the part of the earl marshal against the earl of Derby. Weigh well what we have said, for we have told you the truth, and you never had more occasion for good advice than at this moment.'

The king, on hearing these words, changed colour (for they had boldly spoken out, and certainly what they had said could not be contradicted), turned aside and leant on a window, where he mused a considerable time. He then turned to those who had addressed him, namely, the archbishop of York, the earls of Huntingdon and Salisbury, and three other knights of his chamber, and said,—  
 ‘ I have attentively heard every thing you have advised, and should be blame-worthy if I followed not your counsel : consider, therefore, how you would have me act.’

‘ Sir,’ replied their spokesman, ‘ what we have been talking of is matter of great danger. You must dissemble your resentments, and put an end to this business if you wish for peace and to preserve your honour. You ought to pay more respect to the general opinion of your realm than to the idle talk of two knights. It is believed throughout England that the lord marshal behaved himself very ill, and, by stirring up many things that were better forgotten, is desirous to pick a quarrel with the earl of Derby, raise the people, and throw all things into confusion. He must therefore suffer for so doing, and the earl of Derby be acquitted. We have considered the matter in every point of view, and advise that, before they arm or make further preparations, you send them your commands to appear before you, and to abide by whatever you determine between them. You will therefore give judgment, that, within fifteen days, the earl marshal quit  
 England,

England, without any hope of ever returning, and the earl of Derby be banished thence for the space of ten years. When the time for their departure arrives, you will, to please the people, abridge four years of the earl of Derby's sentence, so that his banishment will be only for six years, but that he must not expect further favour. Such is the advice we give you: be very careful to prevent their meeting in arms, or the greatest mischiefs may arise from it.'

The king was thoughtful a moment, and replied, 'You have faithfully advised me, and it shall be done.'

---

## CHAP. VI.

KING RICHARD OF ENGLAND BANISHES THE  
EARL OF DERBY FROM ENGLAND FOR TEN  
YEARS, AND THE EARL MARSHAL FOR HIS  
LIFE.

NOT long after this, the king of England summoned a large council of the great nobles and prelates at Eltham. On their arrival, he placed his two uncles of Lancaster and York beside him, with the earls of Northumberland, Salisbury and Huntingdon. The earl of Derby and the earl marshal were sent for, and put into separate chambers, for it had been ordered they

were not to meet. The king shewed he wished to mediate between them, notwithstanding their words had been very displeasing to him, and ought not to be lightly pardoned. He required therefore that they should submit themselves to his decision ; and to this end sent the constable of England, with four great barons, to oblige them to promise punctually to obey it.

The constable and the lords waited on the two earls, and explained the king's intentions. They both bound themselves, in their presence, to abide by whatever sentence the king should give. They having reported this, the king said,—‘ Well then, I order that the earl marshal, for having caused trouble in this kingdom, by uttering words which he could not prove otherwise than by common report, be banished the realm : he may seek any other land he pleases to dwell in, but he must give over all hope of returning hither, as I banish him for life. I also order, that the earl of Derby, our cousin, for having angered us, and because he has been, in some measure, the cause of the earl marshal's crime and punishment, prepare to leave the kingdom within fifteen days, and be banished hence for the term of ten years, without daring to return unless recalled by us ; but we shall reserve to ourself the power of abridging this term in part or altogether.’

The sentence was satisfactory to the lords present, who said ; ‘ The earl of Derby may readily ~~two or three years~~ and amuse himself in foreign ~~for he is young enough~~ ; and, although he has



has already travelled to Prussia, the Holy Sepulchre, Cairo and Saint Catherine's, he will find other places to visit. He has two sisters, queens of Castille and of Portugal, and may cheerfully pass his time with them. The lords, knights and squires of those countries, will make him welcome, for at this moment all warfare is at an end. On his arrival in Castille, as he is very active, he may put them in motion, and lead them against the infidels of Granada, which will employ his time better than remaining idle in England. Or he may go to Hainault, where his cousin, and brother in arms, the count d'Ostrevant, will be happy to see him, and gladly entertain him, that he may assist him in his war against the Frieslanders. If he go to Hainault, he can have frequent intelligence from his own country and children. He therefore cannot fail of doing well, whithersoever he goes; and the king may speedily recall him, through means of the good friends he will leave behind, for he is the finest feather in his cap; and he must not therefore suffer him to be too long absent, if he wish to gain the love of his subjects.

'The earl marshal has had hard treatment, for he is banished without hope of ever being recalled; but, to say the truth, he has deserved it, for all this mischief has been caused by him and his foolish talking: he must therefore pay for it.' Thus conversed many English knights with each other, the day the king passed sentence on the earl of Derby and the earl marshal.

## CHAP. VII.

THE EARL OF DERBY, IN CONSEQUENCE OF HIS BANISHMENT, LEAVES ENGLAND FOR FRANCE.

—THE EARL MARSHAL, IN OBEDIENCE TO HIS SENTENCE, GOES TO FLANDERS, AND THENCE INTO LOMBARDY.

**W**HEN the two earls heard the sentence the king had passed on them, they were much cast down, and not without cause. The earl marshal bitterly repented what he had said and done, but he could not foresee its consequences: he had firmly relied on being otherwise supported by the king than he was, or he would not have thought of it. It was, however, necessary to make his preparations for banishment. He settled the payments of his income through the Lombards of Bruges, and, quitting England, arrived at Calais, where he had been governor. He staid there a short time, to receive part of his equipage which had been left behind.

On his departure he took leave of the townsmen of Calais, and, having fixed his route, would not go to France nor Hainault, for he had not any business at these places, but went to Bruges, where he staid fifteen days.

On leaving this town, he visited Ghent, Mechlin, Louvain, St. Tron, Utrecht, Aix and Cologne, where we will leave him, and speak of the earl of Derby,



Derby, who in like manner made his preparations for obeying his sentence of banishment.

When the day of his exile drew near, he went to Eltham, where the king resided. He found there his father, the duke of York his uncle, and with them the earl of Northumberland, sir Henry Percy his son, and a great many barons and knights of England, vexed that his ill fortune should force him out of England. The greater part of them accompanied him to the presence of the king, to learn his ultimate pleasure as to this banishment.

The king pretended that he was very happy to see these lords: he entertained them well, and there was a full court on the occasion. The earl of Salisbury, and the earl of Huntingdon who had married the duke of Lancaster's daughter, were present, and kept near to the earl of Derby, whether through dissimulation or not I am ignorant.

When the time for the earl of Derby's taking leave arrived, the king addressed his cousin with great apparent humility, and said, 'that as God might help him, the words which had passed between him and the lord marshal had much vexed him; and that he had judged the matter between them to the best of his understanding, and to satisfy the people, who had murmured greatly at this quarrel. Wherefore, cousin,' he added, 'to relieve you somewhat of your pain, I now remit four years of the term of your banishment, and reduce it to six years instead of ten. Make your preparations, and provide accordingly.'

'My lord,' replied the earl, 'I humbly thank you;

you; and, when it shall be your good pleasure, you will extend your mercy.'

The lords present were satisfied with the answer, and for this time were well pleased with the king's behaviour, for he received them kindly. Some of them returned with the earl of Derby to London. The earl's baggage had been sent forward to Dover, and he was advised by his father, on his arrival at Calais, to go straight to Paris, and wait on the king of France and his cousins the princes of France, for by their means he would be the sooner enabled to shorten his exile than by any other. Had not the duke of Lancaster earnestly pressed this matter, like a father anxious to console his son, he would have taken the direct road to the count d'Ostrevant in Hainault.

The day the earl of Derby mounted his horse to leave London, upwards of forty thousand men were in the streets bitterly lamenting his departure: 'Ah, gentle earl! will you then quit us? This country will never be happy until your return, and the days until then will be insufferably long. Through envy, treachery and fear are you driven out of a kingdom where you are more worthy to reside than those who cause it. You are of such high birth and gallantry, that none others can be compared to you. Why then will you leave us, gentle earl? You have never done wrong by thought or deed, and are incapable of so doing.'

Thus did men and women so piteously complain, that it was grievous to hear them. The earl of Derby was not accompanied by trumpets,  
nor

nor the music of the town, but with tears and lamentations. Some of the knights who attended him whispered each other—‘ See the conduct of the people, how readily they complain for trifles! Whoever is inclined to stir up the Londoners against the king may soon effect it, and force the king to seek another country, and the earl of Derby to remain: but this is not the moment, for, since my lord of Lancaster suffers it, we must be patient.’

The mayor of London and several of the principal citizens, accompanied the earl of Derby as far as Dartford: some even rode to Dover with him, and remained in his company until he embarked on board the vessel that was to convey him to Calais, when they returned to their homes. The earl of Derby, before his arrival at Calais, had sent a knight and herald to the king of France, and to the dukes of Orleans, Berry, Burgundy and Bourbon, to know if it were agreeable to them that he should fix his residence in Paris, paying punctually for all that he or his people might want, and if the court would receive him.

The king of France, his brother and uncles, readily complied with his request, and apparently seemed very glad that he would come there; for, as they assured the knight, they very sincerely felt for the present disgrace of the earl. The knight and herald, on their return, met the earl at Calais; and the king of France had sent with them sir Charles de Hangiers, to have all the cities and towns opened to the English as they travelled to Paris.

Paris. The earl of Derby set out in gallant array, becoming his rank, and took the road to Amiens, where, and in every other town, he was handsomely received.

---

## CHAP. VIII.

THE COUNT D'OSTREVANT SENDS AMBASSADORS  
TO THE EARL OF DERBY.—THE EARL ARRIVES AT PARIS.

THE moment William earl of Ostrevant, who resided at Quesnoy, heard that his cousin the earl of Derby had crossed the sea, and was at Calais, he ordered sir Ansel de Traffaguies and sir Fierabras de Vertain to ride thither and wait on the earl, and invite him to Hainault, whither if he pleased to come and amuse himself he would give him a hearty welcome, for it would be very agreeable to himself and his countess. The two knights obeyed the earl's orders, and rode to Cambray and Bapaumes; for they had heard the earl of Derby had left Calais, and taken the road towards Paris through Amiens.

They determined, in consequence, to push forward, and overtook the earl of Derby on his road, to whom they punctually delivered their message. The earl thanked them, as well as his cousin of Hainault who had sent them, but excused himself  
for



for the present from accepting their invitation, as he was engaged to visit the king of France and his cousins, but that he did not renounce the affection and courtesy the count d'Ostrevant offered him. The two knights, having executed their commission, took leave, and returned to Hainault, to report all they had seen and heard, and the earl continued his journey to Paris.

When news was brought to the king, and the dukes of Orleans, Berry and Burgundy, that the earl of Derby was approaching Paris, the principal French lords instantly made handsome preparations to go out and meet him. The apartments of the hôtel de Saint Pol were richly furnished; and the great barons then in the town set out for Saint Denis.

The king remained at the hôtel de Saint Pol; but the dukes of Orleans and Berry left Paris, and first met the earl of Derby: then came the dukes of Burgundy and Bourbon, and the lord Charles d'Albret, with many great prelates and barons. Their meeting was joyous on both sides, and they entered Paris in brilliant array.

An unfortunate accident happened on this occasion, which I will relate. A prudent and valiant squire, called Boniface, a native of Lombardy, was mounted on a strong courser that had not been well broken. When passing through the streets, he rose upon his hind legs, and the squire, checking by the bridle, pulled him so hard that he fell backward, and threw Boniface with such force on the pavement, that his skull was fractured. Thus  
died

died Boniface, to the great regret of many lords, particularly the duke of Orleans, by whom he was much esteemed. He had been a favourite with the late lord de Coucy, who had brought him from Lombardy to France.

The procession at length arrived at the hôtel de Saint Pol, where the king was waiting: he received very kindly his cousin the earl of Derby, who having been well educated, behaved so agreeably to the king, that he was much liked, and, in token of his favour, the king gave him his order to wear. The earl accepted it with pleasure, and returned his thanks. I cannot pretend to say all that passed between them, but the meeting seemed to their mutual satisfaction.

When wine and spices had been served, the earl took leave of the king, and waited on the queen, who resided in other apartments of the same palace. He staid there some time, for the queen entertained him handsomely. On taking leave, he went to the court and mounted his horse, and was escorted to his hôtel by the lords of France, where he supped that night with his own people.

Such was his reception at Paris: there were many grand entertainments made to amuse him, and that he might think the less on his banishment from his own country, which was very displeasing to the French lords. [In spite of all their kind endeavours, he at times was very melancholy, and not without reason, on being thus separated from his family. He was impatient to return, and much vexed that for such a frivolous cause he should

should be banished from England; and from his four promising sons, and two daughters. The earl frequently dined with the king, the duke of Orleans, and other great barons, who did every thing they could to make his time pass agreeably.]

We will now leave the earl of Derby, to speak of the affairs of the church, and of the two popes, Benedict of Avignon and Boniface of Rome.

## CHAP. IX.

THE EMPEROR AND THE KING OF FRANCE PURSUE THE PLANS THEY HAD SETTLED AT RHEIMS, FOR AN UNION OF THE CHURCH.—THE BISHOP OF CAMBRAY IS SENT BY THEM TO THE POPE AT ROME.—THE ANSWER THAT IS MADE HIM.

**Y**OU have before heard of the meeting which had taken place at Rheims between the emperor and the king of France, when many secret councils were held, on establishing the union of the church, for the present schism was disgraceful. In consequence of the plans then formed, Peter d'Ailly, bishop of Cambray, was sent ambassador to pope Boniface at Rome. The bishop set out, and met the pope at Fondi, to whom he delivered his credential letters from the king and the emperor.



The pope, having examined them, was satisfied of their validity, and received the bishop kindly, for he guessed the object of his mission. The ambassador explained the cause of his coming, which the pope attentively listened to, and thus replied: 'That the answer his propositions required did not only personally attach to him, but to all his brother-cardinals, who might aspire to the papacy. He would summon a consistory, and, when they had fully considered the matter, would give him an answer that should be satisfactory. This was, for the present, sufficient for the bishop of Cambray, who dined that day at the palace of the pope with some of his cardinals, and then, leaving Fondi, went to Rome.

Shortly after, pope Boniface held a convocation of cardinals at Rome; for he had quitted Fondi, and resided at the vatican. No one was present at this consistory but the pope and cardinals, before whom he laid the propositions of the bishop of Cambray, and demanded advice what answer he should make to them. Much discussion ensued; for the cardinals were averse to undo what they had done, thinking it would turn out to their disgrace. They said to the pope.—'Holy father, considering our situation, we think you should conceal your real sentiments on this matter: but to encourage the hopes of the king of France and those of his creed, you will in your answer declare your willingness to comply with whatever the emperor of Germany, the king of Hungary and the king of England shall advise you; that the  
person

person who resides at Avignon, and styles himself pope Benedict, whom the king of France and his nation have acknowledged, must first resign all claims to the papacy; and that then you will cheerfully attend a general council, wherever the above-named kings shall appoint, and bring your brother-cardinals with you.'

This advice was very agreeable to Boniface, who replied, in conformity to it, but in more general terms, to the bishop of Cambray, who acquitted himself honourably in the business he had been sent upon.

When the Romans heard that the emperor and the king of France had written to the pope to resign his dignity, great were the murmurings throughout the city; for the Romans were fearful they should lose the holy see, which was of infinite consequence to them and profit, from the general pardons that were personally sought for, and which obliged such multitudes to visit Rome. The jubilee was soon to take place, for which they had made great preparations; and they were uneasy lest they might have incurred these expenses for nothing.

The principal inhabitants of Rome waited on the pope, and shewed him greater love than ever, saying: 'Holy father, you are the true pope: remain in the inheritance and patrimony of the church, which belonged to St. Peter, and let no one advise you to do otherwise. Whoever may be against you, we will always continue your steady friends, and expend our lives and fortunes in the defence of your right.'

Pope Boniface replied,—‘ My children, be comforted, for I will never resign the popedom ; and, whatever the emperor or the king of France may do, I will not submit myself to their wills.’

The Romans were satisfied with this answer, and returned to their homes. The bishop of Cambray took no notice of this, but proceeded in the business he had been charged with. I fancy pope Boniface kept steady in his answer, that when it should be publicly known pope Benedict had resigned the papacy, he would act in such manner as should be agreeable to those who had sent him.

The bishop, not being able to obtain more, departed for Germany, and found the emperor at Constance, to whom he delivered the answer you have heard. The emperor said,—‘ Bishop, you will carry this to the king of France, our brother and cousin ; and, accordingly as he shall act, so will I and the empire ; but, from what I see, he must begin first, and when he has deposed his pope, we will depose ours.’

The bishop took leave of the emperor, and set out for Paris, where the king and his lords were expecting him. He delivered the answer from the pope, and the message from the emperor, which was kept secret until the king should assemble a great council of his nobles, to have their advice on the matter.

## CHAP. X.

THE KING OF FRANCE, IN CONFORMITY TO THE  
ADVICE OF HIS NOBLES AND THE UNIVERSITY  
OF PARIS, SENDS THE BISHOP OF CAMBRAY TO  
POPE BENEDICT AT AVIGNON, ON THE SUBJECT  
OF AN UNION OF THE CHURCH, AND ALSO  
HIS MARSHAL BOUCICAUT THITHER, TO  
CONSTRAIN THE POPE TO OBEDIENCE BY  
FORCE OF ARMS SHOULD THERE BE OCCASION.

THE king of France, in consequence of the  
answer of pope Boniface, and the message of  
the emperor, that the pope at Avignon must be the  
first deposed, assembled the nobles and prelates of  
his kingdom at Paris.

Prior to this, some of the prelates of France,  
such as the archbishop of Rheims, sir Guy de  
Roye, the archbishops of Rouen and of Sens, the  
bishops of Paris, Beauvais and Autun, had strongly  
supported the pope of Avignon, particularly Cle-  
ment, who had promoted them to their bene-  
fices. These six prelates, therefore, by particular  
orders, were not summoned to this council, but  
others in their room, and the heads of the univer-  
sity of Paris.

After the bishop of Cambray had fully explained  
to the assembly the object of his embassy to Rome,  
what he had done there, the pope's answer, and  
the message from the emperor, for he had re-

turned through Germany, they began to discuss the matter, and it was resolved the university should have the preponderating voice. It was determined in this council, to the satisfaction of the king, the duke of Orleans, their uncles, and all the members of it, that the king of France should send his marshal, the lord Boucicaut, to Avignon, to prevail on pope Benedict, by negotiation or force, to resign the papacy, and submit himself to the determination of the king and his council; that the church in France should remain neuter as to the true pope, until union were restored to it, according to the decrees of a general council of prelates and churchmen which was to be instantly called.

This resolution seemed good to every one, and was adopted by the king of France, and all who had formed the council. The marshal of France and the bishop of Cambray were ordered to Avignon; and these two lords left Paris soon afterwards, travelling in company as far as Lyons, where they separated. The marshal was to remain at Lyons until he heard from the bishop, who continued his journey to Avignon, to learn what answer the person who styled himself pope at Avignon would make to the proposals from the king of France.

On his arrival at Avignon, he fixed his lodgings in the great wood market. Some of the cardinals suspected the cause of his coming, since he was sent by the king of France, but they dissembled their thoughts until they heard what he had to say,  
and

and observed how Benedict should answer and conduct himself. As soon as the bishop of Cambray had taken some refreshments and changed his dress, he waited on the pope in his palace. He made him, when in his presence, the proper obeisances, but not so reverently as if he and all the world acknowledged him for the true pope, although he had given him the bishoprick of Cambray, through the recommendation of the lords in France.

The bishop, being well versed in Latin and French, made an eloquent harangue, to explain the object of his mission from the emperor and the king of France. When the pope heard that it was the intention of these two monarchs that he as well as pope Boniface should resign their dignities, he frequently changed colour, and, raising his voice, said,—‘ I have laboured hard for the good of the church, and have been duly elected pope, yet now my resignation is sought: this I will never consent to as long as I live; and I wish the king of France to know that I shall not pay any attention to his regulations, but will keep my name and dignity until death.’

‘ Sire,’ answered the bishop of Cambray, ‘ I always thought you, under reverence, more prudent than I find you really are. Fix a day for the meeting of your cardinals, to consult with them on your answer; for, unless they agree with you, your opposition will be in vain against them and against the powers of Germany and France.’

Upon this, two cardinals of his creation, who foresaw that matters would end badly, stepped forward and said, 'Holy father, the bishop of Cambray advises you well: follow what he says, we entreat you.' The pope replied, he would do so willingly: the audience was put an end to, and the bishop returned to his lodgings, without waiting on any of the cardinals.

On the next morning, the consistory bell was rung, and a conclave holden of all the cardinals then at Avignon, at the pope's palace. The bishop of Cambray discoursed in Latin on the reasons why he was come thither, and on the object of those who had sent him. When he had finished speaking, he was told they would maturely consider the business, and give him an answer, but that at present he must withdraw. He went elsewhere to amuse himself, while Benedict and his cardinals debated his proposals. They were for a considerable time in council, and many thought it very hard to undo what had been regularly effected; but the cardinal of Amiens said,—'My fair sirs, whether we will or not, we must obey the orders of the emperor of Germany and the king of France, since they are now united; for, without their good pleasure, we cannot exist. We might indeed withstand the emperor, if the king of France would support us, but, as that is no longer the case, we must submit, or he will exclude us from all our benefices, and how then are we to live? In truth, holy father, we have elected you  
pope,



pope, on condition that you would exert yourself in the reform of abuses in the church, and promote an union, all of which you have strenuously promised to do until this day. Answer for yourself, therefore, in a temperate manner, that we may praise you, for you must be better acquainted with your own mind and courage than we are.'

Many of the cardinals spoke at once, and said; 'Holy father, the cardinal of Amiens speaks well, and we beg of you to let us know your intentions.' Upon this, Benedict replied,—'I have always had an earnest desire for an union of the church, and have taken great pains to promote it; but since, through the grace of God, you have raised me to the papacy, I will never resign it, nor submit myself to any king, duke or count, nor agree to any treaty that shall include my resignation of the popedom.'

The cardinals now all rose, and there was much murmuring: some said he had well spoken, and others the contrary. Thus was the conclave broken up in discord, and many of the cardinals departed to their hôtels without taking leave of the pope. Those who were in his good graces remained with him.

When the bishop of Cambray observed the manner in which the cardinals left the palace, he knew there had been great disagreement, and entering the hall of the conclave, advanced up to Benedict, who was still on his throne, and, without much respect, said,—'Sire, give me an answer: I cannot wait longer: for your council is dismissed.'

dismissed. You must let me have your final determination on the proposals I made you, as I am now about to depart hence.'

Pope Benedict, still heated by anger at the speech of the cardinal of Amiens, replied,—' Bishop, I have consulted my brother-cardinals, who have elected me to this dignity, and they agree that every due solemnity has been used, such as is usual in such cases. Since, therefore, I am pope, and acknowledged as such by all my subjects, I will preserve it as long as I live, and will not, though it cost me my life, renounce it, for I have never done any thing to forfeit the divine protection. You will tell our son of France, that hitherto we have considered him as a good Catholic; but that, from the bad advice he has lately received, he is about to embrace errors which he will repent of. I entreat that you would beg of him, from me, not to follow any councils the result of which may trouble his conscience.'

On saying this, Benedict rose from his throne and retired to his chamber, attended by some of his cardinals. The bishop of Cambray went to his inn, dined soberly, and then, mounting his horse, crossed the Rhône, passed through Villeneuve, and lay at Bagnols\*, which belongs to France. He there heard that the lord Boucicaut, marshal of France, was at Saint Andrieu, within nine leagues

---

\* Bagnols,—a town in lower Languedoc, three leagues from the Pont du Saint Esprit, and fifty-two from Lyons.

of Avignon, and thither the bishop went on the following day and related to him all that had passed, with the answer he had received from Benedict, who stiled himself pope.

---

## CHAP. XI.

IN CONSEQUENCE OF THE ANSWER OF POPE BENEDICT, THE MARSHAL BOUCICAUT OBLIGES HIM BY FORCE OF ARMS TO SUBMIT HIMSELF TO THE WILL OF THE KING OF FRANCE RESPECTING AN UNION OF THE CHURCH.

**W**HEN the marshal of France had heard from the bishop of Cambray the pope's answer, and that he refused to submit himself to the king of France, he said to him,—‘ Bishop, you may now return to France, for you have nothing more to do here, and I will execute what I have been charged with by the king, my lords his uncles and the council.’ The bishop replied, ‘ God’s will be done.’ He remained that day in the village, and on the morrow departed, taking his road toward Puy in Auvergne.

The marshal instantly set clerks and messengers to work in summoning the knights, squires and men at arms in the Viverrais, Auvergne, and from the countries as far as Montpellier, for he was commissioned

commissioned so to do by the king of France. He ordered the sénéchal of Beaucaire to shut up all the passes to Avignon, as well on the Rhône as by land, that nothing might enter that place, nor be sent thither from the Pont du Saint Esprit, for he was particularly anxious that it should not be supplied with provisions or stores. The summons of the marshal was readily obeyed, by some through attachment, but by many in the expectation of plundering Avignon.

Sir Raymond de Touraine came with pleasure to the marshal, who was ready to march, in company with the lords de la Both, de Tournon, de Monclau and d'Uzès and others, so numerous, that the marshal sent a herald with his defiance to the pope in his palace, and to his cardinals in Avignon.

This was a severe blow to the cardinals, and to the inhabitants, for they knew well they could not long effectually withstand the power of the king of France. They called a council of the cardinals and principal persons in the town, and, in consequence, waited on Benedict, and temperately remonstrated with him, that they were unable and unwilling to support a war against the king of France, for it was necessary they should carry on their commerce, by land and water, to live. Benedict, like a madman, replied,—‘ Your city is strong, and well provided with stores and provisions. I will send to Genoa and elsewhere for men at arms; and write to my son the king of Arragon, who is the standard-bearer of the church, to come to my assistance,

assistance, which he will do, for he is bound to it by two reasons; I am his kinsman, and he owes obedience to the pope. Do you depart hence and guard your town, and I will defend my palace, for you are alarmed at trifles.'

This was all the answer they could obtain from the pope, and the cardinals and townsmen retired to their houses. The pope, whom I call Benedict, had, for a long time before, laid up in his palace great quantities of wines, corn, salted meat, oil, and of every necessary store for a fortress. He himself was a bold and determined character, not easily dismayed.

The marshal Boucicaut marched from the town of Saint Esprit, and, with the consent of the prince of Orange, passed through Orange with his army, and entered the comtat Venaissin, belonging to the church, which was soon overrun. The men at arms crossed the bridge at Sorgues\*, and were masters of each side of that river. The marshal left some men in the town to guard it and defend the passage, and oppose the garrison of Noues, that held out for the pope. He then fixed his head quarters at Saint Verain, near Avignon, and his army was daily increasing.

The city of Avignon was now so completely surrounded, that nothing could enter by land or water without leave. The sénéchal of Beaucaire's quarters were at Villeneuve, close to Avignon,

---

\* The river Sorgues takes its rise from the spring at Vaucluse.

though

though belonging to France, and he, with five hundred combatants, guarded that side of the town. The marshal of France, with two thousand men at arms, was on the opposite side: he sent notice to the townsmen, that if they did not open their gates, and submit themselves to his will, he would burn and destroy all the houses and vineyards as far as the river Durance. This greatly dismayed the inhabitants of both sexes, who had their inheritances in that part of the country, and they called a council, to which they admitted the cardinals of Amiens, Poitiers, Neufchâteau and Viviers, to have their advice. The townsmen, who were the most interested in the marshal's menace, informed the meeting of their fears lest he should execute it, saying it was made by orders from the king of France, whom they were not prepared to resist, nor could they do so with effect, for he was too near a neighbour; and that, considering all things, it would be much better to submit themselves to the king of France than remain obstinate in the support of Benedict, who was unable to afford them any assistance.

They asked the cardinals if they would join them. The cardinals said they would. Provisions began to be scarce in Avignon; besides, their benefices were in France, which they would not lose; and they agreed with the townsmen in their treaty with the marshal. The terms of the treaty were, that he and his army should be admitted into Avignon, to besiege the palace, but that no violence should be done to the cardinals, their dependants,

pendants, nor the townsmen. This the marshal, the French lords, and captains of the men at arms, swore faithfully to observe. When this was done, the army entered the town, and lodged themselves at their ease, for it was large enough, and took off all obstructions on the Rhône and at the gates, to allow free liberty for the entrance of provisions.

Pope Benedict was much cast down when he heard that his cardinals and the townsmen had concluded a treaty with the marshal of France, without consulting him. He said, he would never surrender so long as he had breath, and shut himself up in his palace, which is very strong and handsome, and easy to be defended, provided it be well stored with provisions. The pope sent off letters by messengers, before the marshal entered Avignon, to the king of Arragon, humbly entreating him to come and succour him in his distress, and to send him men at arms sufficient to oppose the marshal of France. He added, that if he could be extricated from the situation in which he was, and conveyed to Arragon, he would establish the holy see at Perpignan or at Barcelona.

The king of Arragon carefully perused these letters, but paid little attention to their contents. He said to those near his person,—‘What! does this priest suppose that I am to involve myself in a war with the king of France, to support his quarrel? I should indeed be very blame-worthy, were I to interfere.’ ‘Sire,’ replied his knights, ‘what



‘what you say is true: you have no business to meddle with such matters, for you must know that the king of France has been ably advised, and has just cause to act as he does. Leave the clergy to themselves; and, if they wish for support, they must subject themselves to those lords from whose countries they receive the amount of their benefices. They have too long held them undisturbed, and they ought to feel and be sensible whence their wealth arises. The king of France has beside written to entreat that you would agree with him in a neutrality between the two popes. Accept his invitation, for the queen, who is his cousin-german, has done so; and the greater part of the kingdom and clergy are willing to do the same; for we hold, especially the Catalonians, that this opinion is the surest: otherwise, should the Christian princes not unite in the same, there will never be any union in the church, from the divisions of these two popes.’

Thus did the king of Arragon and his lords converse on the subject, while poor Benedict, shut up in his palace, was looking in vain for assistance being sent him from Arragon. The marshal of France was in Avignon, and the palace so strictly invested nothing could enter it, which forced those within to live on the provisions they had. Of food, there was a sufficiency for two or three years; but, as there was a scarcity of fuel to dress their victuals, they began to be alarmed at the consequences.

The

The king of France held a weekly correspondence with the lord Boucicaut on the state of Benedict; and the king ordered him not to depart until he had completed the business with the pope. He therefore increased the guard round the palace, to prevent him issuing forth. The conclusion was, that Benedict, finding himself thus constrained, that there was no fuel, and that their provisions were daily decreasing, without any assistance coming to his aid, begged for mercy, through the mediation of some of his cardinals. The terms of the treaty were, that he was not to leave the palace of Avignon until union should be restored to the church; that he should be put under the guard of proper persons, and that the cardinals and richest citizens of Avignon should be responsible for his appearance, dead or alive. This satisfied the marshal. Those cardinals who had benefices in France exerted themselves much to conclude this treaty, declaring unanimously they would comply with the orders of the king of France. Thus ended this business, and the men at arms marched away from Avignon, every one to his own home.

## CHAP. XII.

THE MARSHAL BOUCICAUT RETURNS TO HUNGARY AGAINST THE TURKS.—THE EARL OF DERBY SENDS TO REQUEST PERMISSION OF THE DUKE OF LANCASTER TO ACCOMPANY BOUCICAUT IN THIS EXPEDITION.—THE KING OF ENGLAND IS SOLICITED BY THE KING OF FRANCE TO ENGAGE HIS SUBJECTS TO A NEUTRALITY BETWEEN THE TWO POPES, UNTIL A NEW ELECTION SHALL TAKE PLACE; BUT THEY REFUSE COMPLIANCE WITH THEIR MONARCH'S REQUEST.

**A**FTER this exploit, the marshal Boucicaut returned to Paris, and shortly after made preparations to go to Hungary; for the king had written to the king of France, to his uncles, and to the knights and squires of France, that Bajazet was assembling a large army of Turks, Arabians, Persians, Tartars, Syrians, and others of his religion. The king of Hungary was in consequence desirous of collecting a numerous force to oppose him, and offer him battle with more advantage than the last.

The earl of Derby, who resided at Paris at the hôtel de Clifson, near the Temple, was very desirous to go on the expedition to Hungary, to avoid putting the king of France to further expense; for he received from the French treasury,

every

every week, five hundred golden crowns for his expenses, which his people were most punctually paid. On the first mention of this expedition, the earl of Derby eagerly listened to it; for he felt himself under great obligations to the king of France, and was unwilling to be a charge on him longer. He likewise thought that he should gain honour by going to Hungary, and that it would make the time of his banishment the sooner pass away. He consulted his confidential servants, who advised him to undertake it, but first to solicit the consent of his father the duke of Lancaster. The earl, in consequence, sent to England the knight nearest his person, to learn the pleasure of his father, and how he would advise him to act. When the knight, whose name was Dinorth\*, arrived at London, he heard the duke of Lancaster was at his castle of Hertford, about twenty miles from London, whither he went, and related to him the earl of Derby's wish to join the expedition to Hungary. When the duke had heard all he had to say, he was well contented with the state of his son, and bade him welcome, adding, that what he had said, and the letters he had brought, demanded consideration. You will rest yourself here while we deliberate on the subject; and, in the mean time, you must see my son's children, to give them news of their father, and carry intelligence of them to him, for that he will expect

---

\* Dinorth. The MSS. have Du Roch. Q. if not Dymocke.

from you.' 'My lord,' replied the knight, 'what you say is true.' Thus did he, by desire of the duke, stay some little time in England.

The king of France sent ambassadors to Germany to inform the emperor that he had laid hands on Benedict, who for a time had stiled himself pope. These ambassadors were the patriarch of Jerusalem, sir Charles de Hangiers, and others of his knights: they set out for Germany, and met the emperor at Strasbourg, to whom they satisfactorily delivered their message.

The emperor and his council said they would deliberate on the matter, but would gladly first know the determination of the king of England, for which the king of France had taken on himself to answer. Upon this, the embassy returned to France, and reported what you have just read. The king of France, to hasten the business, sent a grand embassy to England to remonstrate with the king on the present distracted state of the church. The king of England would willingly have joined the king of France, but he had not his prelates nor his churchmen and subjects as much under his command as his father-in-law kept them in France. All this he told in confidence to the French ambassadors, at the same time promising them to do his utmost to comply with the king of France's request.

The French ambassadors returned to Paris, and king Richard, in consequence of his wishes to please his father-in-law, summoned a meeting of the prelates and clergy of his realm, at his palace



lace of Westminster, which is out of the city of London. When they met, he eloquently harangued them on the miserable schism in the church, and the plan the king of France had adopted, of remaining neuter between the two rival popes, according to the advice of the university of Paris, and other learned clerks. The kings of Scotland, Castille, Arragon and Navarre had followed this example, and all Germany, Bohemia and Italy intended doing the same. He therefore entreated that his kingdom would adopt the like measures.

When the prelates, who were ignorant why they had been assembled, heard this speech, they were greatly astonished, and were silent. Several murmured and said,—‘ Our king is quite a Frenchman: his only wish is to disgrace and ruin us, but he shall not succeed. What! does he want to make us change our creed? He may go so far that evil will befall him. We will do nothing in this matter, since the king of France proposes it. Let him keep to his neutrality, if he please, and we will keep our creed. We will never suffer any attempt to deprive us of it, unless better reasons can be shewn than those we have just heard.’

The king, seeing them thus murmur together, made the bishop of London, who had laid the proposals of neutrality before them, ask what determination were best to be taken. They replied, one by one, that the matter was so weighty, great

deliberation was requisite before any answer could be made.

Upon this, the meeting broke up, and the clergy who had been assembled retired to their inns in the city of London. The citizens, learning from them the cause of the meeting, and the proposition that the king had made them, were greatly angered against him, for in England the belief in the pope of Rome was general. They said,—‘ This Richard of Bordeaux will ruin every thing, if he be suffered to go on. His head is so thoroughly French, he cannot disguise it; but a day may come when he shall pay for all without having time to repent, and so shall those who have been his advisers.’

Things continued in this state; and all his solicitations and remonstrances with his clergy to remain neuter obtained not any attention. The king of France and his council were dissatisfied that king Richard had not instantly determined his country to be neuter, but in truth he could not prevail with his clergy to do so; and shortly after there fell out such horrible events that the like are not to be found in this whole history, nor in that of any other Christian king, except that noble prince Lusignan, king of Cyprus and Jerusalem, whom his brother and the Cypriots villanously murdered.



## CHAP. XIII.

THE ANSWER THE DUKE OF LANCASTER GIVES  
THE KNIGHT WHO HAD BEEN SENT TO HIM BY  
THE EARL OF DERBY, TO REQUEST HIS PER-  
MISSION TO JOIN THE EXPEDITION AGAINST  
THE TURKS.—THE DEATH OF THE DUKE OF  
LANCASTER.

WHEN the chevalier Dinorth, who had been sent by the earl of Derby to the duke of Lancaster, had received answers to the letters he had brought, and had visited all the castles of the earl his lord, and waited on his four sons and two daughters, who had remained in England, he took leave and returned to France.

The answer from the duke of Lancaster was, that he would not advise his son to go into Hungary, but, when tired of France, to visit Castille and Portugal, and amuse himself at the courts of his brothers-in-law and sisters. The earl of Derby read these letters twice over, and mused some time on their contents. His knight told him in confidence that the duke of Lancaster's physicians and surgeons had assured him the duke laboured under so dangerous a disease it must soon cause his death.

This information made the earl give over all thoughts of travelling further. He remained in

Paris, at the hôtel de Clifton, which had been prepared for him and his attendants. He frequently visited the king the duke, of Orleans and their uncles, who entertained him handsomely. The earl was so sensible of their attentions that he said to the king of France,—‘ My lord, you pay me so much honour and courtesy, and give me proofs of such affection, that I know not how I shall be ever able to make you any return; but, if it please God that I go back to England, I will not forget them in my attachment to our queen, your daughter, whom God preserve!’ ‘ Many thanks, fair cousin,’ replied the king.

It happened, that about Christmas-tide, duke John of Lancaster fell dangerously ill of a disorder which ended his life, to the great grief of all his friends. He had been some time very low spirited, on account of the banishment of his son, whom his nephew king Richard had forced out of England for a trifling cause, and also for the manner in which the kingdom was governed, which, if persevered in, he foresaw must be its ruin. The king of England, as it seemed, was little affected by his uncle’s death, and he was soon forgotten.

Many of the nobles, but not all, were uneasy the kingdom was so weakened by the deaths of the dukes of Lancaster, Gloucester, and the earl of Arundel, and that the earl of Derby was banished, who ought to be now duke of Lancaster by legal succession. Some said,—‘ We shall see what the king will do. It is time that he recal  
his

his cousin the earl of Derby, and remit his further punishment, though there was scarcely any justice in it. It is proper that he return to take possession of his lands, and do homage as duke of Lancaster.' Such speeches were common throughout England, but especially in London, where the earl of Derby was a hundred times more beloved than king Richard.

Notwithstanding these murmurs, and that he was spoken to on the subject, as well as his ministers, nothing was done: on the contrary, the king shewed he was more irritated against the earl. In this he was very badly advised; for if, on the death of his uncle, he had sent for the earl of Derby, and said to him,—'Fair cousin, you are welcome. You are now duke of Lancaster, and, after us, the greatest personage in the realm: we will, therefore, that you remain with us; and we will be governed by your counsels, and do nothing without your approbation;'—he would then have continued king of England, and avoided the unfortunate end that was awaiting him: the catastrophe was now so near at hand that he could no way avoid it, as you shall speedily hear.

## CHAP. XIV.

THE KING OF ENGLAND MAKES THE KING OF FRANCE ACQUAINTED WITH THE DEATH OF THE DUKE OF LANCASTER, BUT DOES NOT NOTICE IT TO THE EARL OF DERBY, THOUGH SON TO THE LATE DUKE.

THE news of the death of the duke of Lancaster was soon public in France. King Richard wrote an account of it to the king with a sort of joy, but did not notice it to his cousin the earl of Derby. The earl, however, knew it as soon, if not sooner than the king of France, from his people in England. He clothed himself and his attendants in deep mourning, as was right, and had his obsequies grandly performed; at which were present, the king of France, the duke of Orleans, their three uncles, and numbers of the prelates and great barons of France, for the earl was much liked by all.

The French barons visited him often, and some were displeased at and took part in his misfortunes: he was an amiable knight, courteous and pleasant to every one, and it was currently said, the king of England was very ill advised not to recal him. To say the truth, if the king had wisely considered consequences, he would have done it: affairs would not have turned out so miserably as they did. The earl of Derby was now, by the death  
of



of his father, duke of Lancaster; and the most potent baron in England, second to none but the king, and by his advice the king should have governed.

The king and his ministers should not have forgotten that the people of England, more particularly the Londoners, had frequently risen against the government; that the king was not popular with any rank of men; and that, during the life of the duke of Gloucester, he had suffered many vexations, and even personal danger. When the citizens of London and the deputies from the great towns waited on the king at Eltham, to petition for the abolition of the war taxes, their plan was (by the secret advice of the duke of Gloucester and other lords) to seize the king and queen, and choose another in his room. King Richard and his queen were to be confined and allowed a sufficiency for their maintenance during their lives.

The duke of Gloucester had requested his nephew, son to the daughter of the duke of Clarence, called John earl of March, to take charge of the government of England; but he had excused himself from so doing, and the meeting was dismissed in tolerably good humour by the prudence and temper of the duke of Lancaster, and Richard reigned with greater prosperity than before. The king was not unacquainted with these designs against him; and by the wicked counsel of those about his person, who gave him to understand the duke of Gloucester was at the bottom of this plot, under pretence of great affection he had him arrested in  
the

Bourbon, do not interfere in the business, for he is daily with some of them. They would have greater weight than any others, and the king of England would do more to please them from love to his queen, who is daughter to the king of France; but, as they have not taken any steps in the matter, it behoves us to hold our peace.'

In truth, the king of France and his family were perfectly well disposed toward the earl of Derby, whom they greatly respected, and wished always for his company. It was considered that he was a widower, likely to marry again, and that the duke of Berry had a daughter, who, though so young, was a widow of two husbands: she had been first married to Louis de Blois, who had died in his youth, and then to the lord Philip d'Artois, count d'Eu, who died in Turkey, as you have read in this history. Mary of Berry was not more than twenty-three years old, and a marriage between her and the earl of Derby was talked of and nearly concluded,

The duke of Berry knew well that the earl of Derby was the greatest heir apparent in England, as did the king of France, who was anxious this match should take place, on account of his daughter being queen of England. It was natural to imagine that two such ladies, so nearly related, would be agreeable company to each other, and that the kingdoms of France and England would enjoy longer peace, and be more intimately connected.

All this would probably have been true, if it could have been accomplished, but king Richard  
and

and his council broke off all these measures. Whatever misfortunes fate has decreed cannot be prevented; they must have their course; and those that befel king Richard are wonderful indeed to think on. He might indeed have avoided them, but what must be will be.

I, John Froissart, author of these chronicles, will literally say what, in my younger days, I heard at a mansion called Berk-hempstead, distant from London thirty miles, and which, at the time I am speaking of, in the year of our Lord 1361, belonged to the prince of Wales, father to king Richard. As the prince and princess were about to leave England for Aquitaine, to hold their state, the king of England, queen Philippa my mistress, the dukes of Clarence, Lancaster, the lord Edmund, who was afterward earl of Cambridge and duke of York, with their children, came to this mansion to visit the prince and take leave of him. I was at that time twenty-four years old, and one of the clerks of the chamber to my lady the queen. During this visit, as I was seated on a bench, I heard the following conversation from a knight to some of the ladies of the queen. He said,—‘There was in that country a book called Brust, which many say contains the prophecies of Merlin. According to its contents, neither the prince of Wales nor duke of Clarence, though sons to king Edward, will wear the crown of England, but it will fall to the house of Lancaster.’ When the knight said this, the earl of Derby was not born: his birth was seven years after,



after. This prophecy, however, was verified, for I have since seen Henry, earl of Derby, king of England.

---

## CHAP. XV.

THE TREATY OF MARRIAGE BETWEEN THE EARL OF DERBY AND THE DAUGHTER OF THE DUKE OF BERRY IS BROKEN OFF BY THE KING OF ENGLAND, THROUGH THE MEANS OF THE EARL OF SALISBURY.

**T**HE moment king Richard learnt that a treaty of marriage was going forward, with the approbation of all parties, between the earl of Derby and the lady Mary of Berry, he became very thoughtful and much displeased thereat. He said to the earl of Salisbury, in whom he had great confidence,—‘My lord, you must make yourself ready to go to Paris: I will give you credential letters to the king our father, and to our well-beloved brother and uncles. Tell them to beware of forming any alliance or marriage with such a traitor as the earl of Derby, who would have betrayed his sovereign: you are perfectly acquainted with the fact: and, with your good understanding, act in such wise that I shall be satisfied, and this marriage be put aside.’

The earl of Salisbury replied,—‘Sire, I shall punctually

punctually obey all your commands; but, if this marriage could be broken off by any other means than mine, I shall be very thankful to you.' 'Earl of Salisbury,' answered the king, 'make no excuses; for I will and entreat that you go thither, and whatever may be the consequences I will support you through them.'

'Well, sire,' said the earl, 'since you specially command me, and the matter seems to interest you so much, I will undertake it, but I go very unwillingly.' 'Hasten your preparation as much as you can,' replied the king, 'that the treaty of marriage be not too far advanced.'

The earl of Salisbury was soon ready, and, having had his credential letters sealed, he departed from the king, who at the time resided with his queen at Leeds-castle. He carried with him private letters from the queen, to the king and queen of France, and to her brother the duke of Orleans, and, hastening his journey, arrived at Dover, where, the wind being favourable, he embarked, and landed at Calais. He was received by the king's half-brother, the earl of Huntingdon, governor of Calais, to whom he told part of his business. He made no long stay at Calais, but continued his road through Amiens to Paris, and wherever he passed he was well entertained. On his arrival at Paris, he lodged at the White Horse, in the square of the Greve \*. After he had dressed him-

---

\* The MSS. say, 'at the château de Festus, in the rue du Tiroir.'

self, he waited on the king and queen, and delivered his credential letters: when the king of France had perused them, he took the earl of Salisbury aside and demanded his business. The earl related to him very minutely every thing he had been charged with by the king of England, and called the earl of Derby a traitor to his natural lord. The king, on hearing this expression, was angered (for he had taken so strong a liking to the earl of Derby that he would not hear any thing said in his dispraise), and gave back the letters to the earl, saying,—‘ Earl of Salisbury, we readily believe what you tell us; but our son of England bears too great a hatred to our cousin of Derby, and we wonder he has continued it so long, for we think that his court would be better adorned if he were near his person, and those who have the most weight in his council ought to advise him to recal his cousin.’ ‘ Very dear sire,’ replied the earl of Salisbury, ‘ I only act as I have been ordered.’ ‘ That is true,’ said the king: ‘ we are not angry with you, for perchance our son may know of these matters more than we can: execute the commission you have been charged with.’ The earl then waited on the duke of Berry, and delivered his message from king Richard. The duke made no answer, but went to the king at the hôtel de Saint Pol, and asked if he had received any news from England. The king told him all that had passed between him and the earl of Salisbury, and a privy council of the king’s uncles and principal lords was summoned on the occasion.

They

They said,—‘ The king of England must fear very much the earl of Derby, from circumstances that we are ignorant of, and that have not been made public. We ought to be more attached to him than to the earl of Derby, from his connection with us by marriage; and, as we have been informed he will be greatly displeased if we proceed in the marriage of the earl of Derby with the countess d’Eu, we must break it off. We have only to conceal what we have heard from England until the earl of Salisbury be returned.’

The king and his council adopted this resolution. When the earl of Salisbury had completed the business he had been sent on to Paris, he took leave of the king and his lords, and departed. The king, however, shewed he was more displeased than otherwise at the intelligence he had brought, and returned to the earl his credential letters, refusing to accept of them, from his partiality to the earl of Derby. This last knew of the earl of Salisbury being at Paris, but they never saw each other; and the earl of Salisbury returned to Calais without speaking to the earl of Derby, and thence to England to report the success of his mission.

The earl of Derby was much displeased that the earl of Salisbury should leave Paris without seeing him, and augured from it nothing favourable.

His council were of the same opinion, and said to him,—‘ My lord, you will soon perceive such things as you little dream of, although they are as

yet hid from you. The French are a close and subtle people : perhaps the king of England and his minions are vexed that the king of France and his court shew you such honour and affection ; perhaps also it may be rumoured in England that you propose marrying the lady Marry of Berry, and king Richard, to whom this intelligence will not be agreeable, has sent over to have it broken off : should that be the case, you will speedily hear of it.'

Thus, as the knights and council of the earl of Derby had supposed matters were, did they turn out. About a month after the departure of the earl of Salisbury, the commissioners from the earl of Derby renewed the matter of the marriage with the lady Mary of Berry : but those on the part of the duke replied,—' Tell my lord of Derby, that when he is in the presence of the king and his brother the duke of Orleans, he may propose this business himself ; for we cannot say more on the subject, since it is not agreeable to our employers that we longer interfere in it.'

These words were repeated to the earl of Derby, who suspected nothing more was meant by it than to hasten the marriage ; for the king of France and his lords had shewn outwardly as much eagerness for the match as ever. He remembered what had been told him, and at a proper opportunity, when the king and his lords were together, renewed his proposal of marriage. The duke of Burgundy, having been charged with the answer, replied, ' Cousin of Derby, we cannot think of marrying  
our

our cousin to a traitor.' The earl instantly changed colour on hearing this expression, and said,—' Sir, I am in the presence of my lord the king, and must interrupt your speech, to answer the expression you have used. I never was nor ever thought of being a traitor; and if any one dare to charge me with treason, I am ready to answer him now, or at whatever time it may please the king to appoint.' ' No, cousin,' said the king, ' I do not believe you will find any man in France that will challenge your honour. The expression my uncle has used comes from England.'

The earl of Derby cast himself on his knees, and replied, ' My lord, I willingly believe you: may God preserve all my friends, and confound mine enemies!' The king made the earl rise, and said—' Earl, be appeased: all this matter will end well; and when you shall be on good terms with every one, we can then talk of marriage. But it will be first necessary that you have possession of your duchy of Lancaster; for it is the custom of France, and of many countries on this side the sea, that when a lord marries with the consent of his lord paramount, should he have one, he settles a dower on his wife.' Upon this, wine and spices were brought: the conversation ended; and, when the king retired to his closet, every one went away.

The earl of Derby, on his return to the hôtel de Clifson, was bitterly enraged, and not without reason, to be accused of treason, when he thought himself one of the most loyal knights in the uni-

verse, and in the presence too of the king of France, who had shewn him so much affection and courtesy, and that this accusation should have been brought from England by the earl of Salisbury. His knights pacified him as well as they could, by saying,—‘ My lord, whoever wishes to live in this world must sometimes suffer trouble. Comfort yourself for the present, and bear all things with patience: perhaps you will hereafter have it made up in joy and glory. Of all the lords on this side of the sea, the king of France loves you the most, and, from what we hear and see, he will instantly prevent any insult being offered you. You should be thankful to him, and his uncles for having kept this matter secret during the stay of the earl of Salisbury, and until he was landed in England.’

‘ Indeed!’ replied the earl: ‘ I should have thought it more loyal to have made the charge while he was here, than to have waited so long. I could then have been enabled sufficiently to exculpate myself in the presence of the king and his lords, so that my innocence would have been apparent, but I must now submit to the disgrace until I shall wipe it off.’

‘ My lord,’ answered his knights, ‘ all faults cannot be corrected at once: have patience, we hope things will turn out better in England than you think. The affection the whole country bear you will very soon, if it please God, deliver you from all dangers.’ Thus did his knights attempt to comfort the earl of Derby, who was more cast down



down than man ever was ; and what they had uttered by chance, for consolation, turned out true, as I shall now relate.

It was known in England that the earl of Salisbury had been sent to France with credential letters, and that, on the strength of them, he had accused the earl of Derby to the king of France and his uncles, as a perjured, false and wicked traitor, which words had greatly angered many of the prelates and barons of the kingdom. They said, when among themselves ; ‘ The earl of Salisbury has done very wrong to carry such a message to France, and make so heavy a charge against the most honourable man in the world. The day will come when he shall repent of this, and say, ‘ It weighs heavily on me that I ever carried a message to France against the earl of Derby.’

The Londoners were exceedingly enraged against the king and his ministers for their conduct, and said,—‘ Ah, gallant and courteous earl of Derby, how great are the jealousies and hatreds against thee when, to overwhelm thee with disgrace and vexation, they charge thee with treason ! It was not enough for the king and his minions to force thee out of the kingdom, but they must add this charge also ; but, by God, all things have an end, and their turn may come.’ ‘ Alas ! ’ cried the people, ‘ what have his children done ? when the king seizes their inheritance, which ought to be theirs by direct succession from grandfather and father. There must be some change in public measures, for we neither can nor will suffer them to go on longer.’

## CHAP. XVI.

KING RICHARD OF ENGLAND PROCLAIMS A TOURNAMENT, WHICH IS ATTENDED BY VERY FEW PERSONS.—ON SETTING OUT FOR IRELAND, HE BANISHES THE EARL OF NORTHUMBERLAND AND HIS SON THE KINGDOM.

SOON after the return of the earl of Salisbury from France to England, king Richard had proclaimed throughout his realm and in Scotland, that a grand tournament would be held at Windsor, by forty knights and forty squires, clothed in green, with the device of a white falcon, against all comers, and that the queen of England, well attended by ladies and damsels, would be at this feast,

The queen was indeed present at the tournament in magnificent array, but very few of the barons attended: the greater part of the knights and squires of England were disgusted with the king, for the banishment of the earl of Derby, the injuries he was doing the earl's children, the murder of the duke of Gloucester, that had been committed in the castle of Calais, the death of the earl of Arundel, whom he had beheaded in London, and the perpetual exile of the earl of Warwick. None of the kindred of these lords came to the feast, which was of course very poorly attended.

The king, after this tournament, made preparations to go to Ireland. He left his queen, Isabella,

bella, and her household at Windfor-castle, and took the road to Bristol, where he laid in ample purveyances and stores. He had with him full two thousand lances, knights and squires, and ten thousand archers.

When the Londoners heard he was set out, they began to murmur together and say,—‘ Well ! Richard of Bordeaux has taken the road to Bristol for Ireland. It will be his destruction : never will he return thence to joy, more than his ancestor, king Edward, who governed his realm so foolishly, through the counsels of the Despencers, and paid for it. This Richard of Bordeaux has confided so long in weak and wicked counsellors, that it cannot longer be borne.’

You must know, that although many barons, knights and squires accompanied the king in his expedition to Ireland, they were much discontented with him, and did not follow him with a good will. When they were together, they conversed, saying, ‘ Our king governs very badly, and too readily believes weak counsel.’ This was so often and so loudly spoken of throughout the realm, particularly by the earl of Northumberland and his son Harry Percy, that the king’s ministers heard of it, and said to the king ; ‘ Sire, the earl of Northumberland and his son say things that must not be suffered, for they want to excite your subjects to rise against you. Every rebel must be punished, one after another, that the greatest barons may fear you, and take example.’

‘ That is true,’ replied the king : ‘ how shall  
I act

I act on this occasion?' 'We will tell you, sire: they are to join this expedition, but not yet arrived. When they come, order them to your presence by the earl of Salisbury or any other you please, and then remonstrate with them on the injurious speeches they have uttered against you and your ministers. You will hear what answer they make, and, as that may be, consider how you shall punish them, by imprisonment or otherwise.' The king replied,—'You say well, and what you advise shall be done.'

The earl of Northumberland and his son had good friends on this expedition, by whom great part of the secret councils of the king were revealed: they were strongly advised not to join the armament, nor appear in the king's presence, for that he was so wrath with them, they would at least be severely reprimanded, if not imprisoned. On hearing this, they retarded their journey towards Bristol; for, according to the intelligence sent them, had they come, they would have run a risk of their lives.

The king's ministers, perceiving the earl of Northumberland did not arrive, said to him,—'See, sire, if we did not tell you the truth: neither the earl of Northumberland nor his son condescend to serve you, although ordered; and, if you send them a special summons, you will have a confirmation that what we have told you is true.' The king said, it should be done. Letters were signed, sealed and sent off by a special messenger, containing orders for the earl of Northumberland  
and

and sir Henry Percy instantly to join the king's forces, and perform their duties as they were bounden to do.

The messenger continued his journey to a very handsome castle of the earl of Northumberland on the borders of Scotland, and delivered his letters. The earl read them attentively, and then gave them to his son.

They determined to entertain the messenger well, and to write to the king to excuse themselves, as they were no way prepared, nor could they leave their own country, and as the king had a sufficiency of men for the business he was going upon.

The messenger returned with his answers, and gave them the king; but they were not agreeable to him nor to his ministers, and for this and other charges, which were publicly made against the earl of Northumberland and his son, they were banished England, never to return until recalled by the king. This sentence was published in London and in all the towns of England, to the great astonishment of the citizens, who could not conceive why they had thus been so severely punished; for they had always considered the earl of Northumberland and sir Henry Percy as two of the most loyal subjects in the realm. Some said, when conversing on this matter, that 'the ministers of the king hated them, and would in the end cause their master's destruction. It may be that the earl and his son have talked too freely about the king's ministers, and his foolish government;

ment; and, as truth is not always agreeable, these gallant knights suffer for it; but those who have now judged them may hereafter have their turn.'

Such were the conversations of the discontented Londoners, as well as of the majority of the English people. The earl and his son were connected by blood with the noblest and richest families, who were exasperated by their banishment; and among them his brother, sir Thomas Percy, who had done many very great services to the crown of England. When the earl heard of his banishment, he summoned all his friends and relations; but many were with the king and could not attend. On their assembling, he consulted them how he should act in the disgrace the king had so undeservedly heaped on him; and it was determined to send to Scotland, to request the king would afford the earl his son an asylum in that country until affairs should mend, or the king's anger be pacified.

This resolution was adopted, and a messenger sent to the king of Scotland to make the above request. King Robert, the earl Archibald of Douglas and the barons of Scotland, cheerfully complied with it, and returned for answer, that the kingdom was ready to receive them; and, if they wanted five or six hundred lances, they would be instantly at their service, on hearing from them. This answer was highly pleasing to the earl of Northumberland and his kindred; and things remained in this state, the earl in his own country among his friends; for king Richard  
and

and his advisers had in a short time so much to do, that they had no leisure to attend to the earl of Northumberland, nor to say to him, 'Quit the kingdom, or we will force you.' They were obliged to give up all thoughts but for their own safety, as you will hear in the course of this history.

---

## CHAP. XVII.

THE ENGLISH, AND PARTICULARLY THE LONDONERS, RISE IN FAVOUR OF THE EARL OF DERBY AGAINST KING RICHARD.

**D**URING the time king Richard was holding his court at Bristol and in that neighbourhood, there was a general insurrection of the people of England. The courts of justice were closed; at which many of the prelates, barons and prudent part of the people, who only wanted for peace and to pay what was lawful, were much distressed. A stop was put to all traffic, for merchants dare not travel for fear of being robbed, and having no courts to apply to for redress. All these things were very prejudicial, and contrary to the usual customs of the country; for in general all people, labourers and tradesmen, lived peaceably, and followed their occupations without hindrance, but it was now quite the contrary.

When merchants went with their goods from one town to another, and had any money in their purses,



purfes, it was taken from them. The farmers' houfes were pillaged of grain, and their beeves, pigs and ſheep carried away, without the owners daring to ſay a word. Theſe enormities increaſed ſo much, there was nothing but complaints heard. The common people ſaid; 'Times are ſadly changed for the worſe ſince the days of king Edward of happy memory. Juſtice was then rigorous in puniſhing the wicked. Then there was no man in England daring enough to take a fowl or ſheep without paying for them, but now they carry off all things, and we muſt not ſpeak. This cannot go on without the country being ruined, and yet no one attempts to check it. We have a good-for-nothing king, who only attends to his idle pleaſures; and, as it ſhould ſeem, he cares not how public affairs are managed, ſo that his inclinations are gratified. We muſt look for a remedy, or our enemies and ill-wiſhers will be rejoiced and laugh at us. King Richard has made his brother, the earl of Huntingdon, governor of Calais, and perchance there may be ſome underhand treaties going forward to ſurrender it to the French, although it be ſo neceſſary and convenient to England: ſhould this happen no nation will be ever more diſcomfited than the Engliſh, and with good reaſon, for they will loſe the keys of the entrance to France.'

Theſe murmurings and diſcontents multiplied; and the prelates and rich barons came to live in London, that they might avoid the troubles and dangers which were increaſing throughout the kingdom.

kingdom. The families of those whom the king had put to death or banished were rejoiced, and looked out for greater mischiefs as the consequence.

The citizens of London, who being rich from their trade, are enabled to live in state, and by whom the other parts of England are generally governed, foresaw that most dangerous consequences would ensue, unless they stepped forward, as they had wisely done formerly against king Edward and the Despensers, who had forced queen Isabella and the prince of Wales out of the kingdom, and wanted to destroy them. The king had no cause for so doing, but they were absent from England three years. When the Londoners perceived king Edward so besotted with the Despensers, they provided a remedy, by sending secretly to queen Isabella information, that if she could collect a body of three hundred armed men, and land with them in England, she would find the citizens of London, and the majority of the nobles and commonalty, ready to join her, and place her on the throne.

The queen found a friend in sir John of Hainault, lord of Beaumont and Chimay, and brother to count William of Hainault, who undertook, through affection and pity, to carry her and her son back to England. He exerted himself so much in her service, with knights and squires, that he collected a body of four hundred, and landed them in England, to the great comfort of the Londoners.

The citizens joined them, for, without their assistance,

assistance, they would never have accomplished their enterprise. King Edward was made prisoner at Bristol, and carried to Berkeley-castle, where he died. His advisers were all put to death with much cruelty; and that same day king Edward III. was crowned king of England, in the palace of Westminster.

The Londoners remembered all these circumstances very well; for the children of those days, now become men, had often had them told by their fathers, and others read them in the chronicles of those times. They therefore said to one another privately,—‘Our ancestors, in former days, provided a remedy for the mischiefs that afflicted the country, which were not so alarming as at this moment: if this wicked king Richard be suffered to rule according to his pleasure, we must all be ruined, and the country destroyed. Ever since he began his reign, the kingdom has not prospered to the degree in which it did before: he shews no signs of being the son of the prince of Wales; for, if he were his son, he would follow his manners, and take pleasure in imitating his prowess, instead of idly dallying with ladies, and spending his time among them, or putting his confidence in those who have neither weight nor sense but in amassing treasures and destroying England. Have not the traitors near his person infamously murdered that valiant duke of Gloucester, because he saw clearly public affairs were badly governed, going on from bad to worse, and spoke boldly the truth concerning them? Have they not also put to death that gallant knight the  
earl

earl of Arundel, and banished England, without reason, the gentle sir Henry of Lancaster, earl of Derby, by whom, and his four promising sons, the kingdom ought to be supported? This cruel conduct is much aggravated; for, while they make the earl suffer many disgusts beyond sea, they have disinherited his children of the estates that devolved to them from their grandmother, the lady Blanche of Lancaster, by dividing and distributing them daily to those who are unworthy to possess them. Because those two gallant knights, the earl of Northumberland and sir Henry Percy, have spoken their minds on this subject, king Richard has also banished them: it is clear there will not soon be any men of courage and honesty in the country, and hatreds and discontents are now increasing every where, so that if a remedy be not sought for, all things will fall to ruin. The remedy is in the earl of Derby, who is now losing his time in France: him we must send for, and, on his arrival, appoint him regent of the kingdom, that he may reform all abuses, and punish those who have used him so ill. Richard of Bordeaux must be arrested and confined in the Tower of London, when all his actions will be examined and put into writing, which are sufficiently numerous, and will prove clearly he is unworthy to govern a kingdom or wear a crown: his acts are so infamous, that they will condemn him.

## CHAP. XVIII.

THE ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY IS SENT TO FRANCE BY THE LONDONERS, AND OTHERS OF THEIR PARTY IN ENGLAND TO BRING BACK THE EARL OF DERBY.

SUCH was the language of the Londoners, and of many others throughout England; but, although much was done to excite the people to insurrections, they would never have attempted what they did, if the Londoners had not set them the example. The citizens of London, who, from their power and wealth, lead the rest of England, held several secret councils, to which were admitted some prelates and knights, when they resolved to send in search of the earl of Derby, who was residing at Paris or thereabout, and bring him back to England. On his return, they were to remonstrate with him on the weak government of wicked king Richard, and propose, if he would undertake it, to give him the crown, and elect him and his heirs kings for ever, on condition that he promised to govern according to the ancient usages of the country.

They next thought on the most proper person to send on this commission: he must be prudent and brave; for it would be a grand enterprize to seduce the earl from France, when the king and his uncles were shewing him every token of love  
and

and courtesy; and he would not put any belief in the simple propositions of a low-born person, nor in any letters that were sent him, but rather the contrary. In consequence, they entreated the archbishop of Canterbury\*, a man of prudence and wisdom, to undertake it, who, for the good of his country, complied with the request. He made his preparations for the journey so privately, that none knew of his departure but those in the secret. He, with six more, embarked on board a vessel on the Thames, and landed at Sluys, thence he went to Ardembourg, Ghent, Oudenarde, Ath, Condé and Valenciennes, and stopped at the hôtel of the Swan, in the market-place. Having staid there three days to recover himself, he pursued his journey, not as archbishop of Canterbury, but like a simple monk on a pilgrimage, discovering to no one his rank, nor the business he was about. He departed from Valenciennes the fourth day, having hired a guide to conduct him to Paris, giving out that he was on a pilgrimage to Saint Maur des Fossés†. He arrived at length where the earl of Derby resided, which was, I believe, at the hôtel de Vincheſter‡, near to Paris.

When

---

\* Thomas Fitz-alan, son to the earl of Arundel.

† Saint Maur des Fossés,—a town in the isle of France, diocese of Paris.

‡ Froissart has said before, the earl of Derby resided at the hôtel de Clifſon, near the Temple. This hôtel de Vincheſter was so called from having been built by John bishop of Win-

When the earl of Derby first saw the archbishop, his heart rejoiced and he recovered his spirits. Those about him were well pleased, for they concluded he had brought some important intelligence from England. The archbishop, however, did not discover the cause of his coming, and, to prevent any suspicions of it, said he was on a pilgrimage to Saint Maur des Fossés, which the earl's attendants believed and were satisfied.

When the archbishop thought it was time to make the object of his journey known, he took the earl into a private chamber, and there informed him of the miserable state England was in; that violence and desolation ruled in many parts, and that, by the king's fault, there was neither law nor justice: that the Londoners, with some prelates and valiant men, had determined to remedy these evils, and that for this he had been sent by them to say, that if the earl would return to England (for he was wasting his time in France) they would make him king: Richard of Bordeaux had done, or consented to so many atrocious acts, that the people were indignant, and resolved to rise against him. 'Now is the time, or never,' added the archbishop, 'for you to seek your de-

---

chester 1204. It belonged, at the period we are now speaking of, to the duke of Berry.—*Savrol Antiquités de Paris*.

There seems a mistake as to the name of the bishop of Winchester. Peter de Rupibus was bishop 1204, and died 1238.

This hôtel de Vincheſter is pronounced, by corruption, Bicêtre, and was converted into a bridewell, before the Revolution, for disorderly women.

liverance,



liverance, and the advantage of yourself and children; for, if you do not, no one else will for them, since this Richard of Bordeaux is giving away all their estates to his minions, or to whoever asks for them. The citizens of London, and many other gallant men, are greatly enraged at such conduct, and would amend it if they could, though hitherto they have been silent.

‘He has filled up the measure of his crimes by the murder of the duke of Gloucester, the beheading of the earl of Arundel without cause, the exile of the earl of Warwick, and your banishment; clearly shewing his intentions to deprive England of its nobles and the support she might have from them, for he has lately banished the earl of Northumberland and his son because they talked too freely of him and his ministers. The citizens of London and the greater part of the prelates and barons of England entreat you will not sleep over this business, but that you will take leave of the king of France and the French, and return home, where you will be joyfully received, and every promise I have made be punctually fulfilled, for the country desire none other than you for their king, so much are you beloved and respected.’

When the earl of Derby had heard this speech of the archbishop, he did not immediately reply, but, leaning on a window that looked into the gardens, mused a while, and having various thoughts in his mind, turned to the bishop, and

said; 'My lord, your speech requires much consideration. I would be unwilling to begin an enterprise and be forced to leave it unfinished, for I well know, that unless by the means you propose, it will be a long time before I return to England. I am loth to resort to this, for the king of France and his nobles have paid me every honour and attention, and will continue so to do, as long as I shall please to live among them. Should I accept of the offers and kind promises which you and my good friends the citizens of London make, I must subject myself to their will; arrest king Richard, and put him to death. For this I shall be universally blamed, and I would not willingly do so, if any other means could be adopted.'

'My lord,' replied the archbishop, 'I am sent hither with every good disposition towards you. Call in your council, and lay before them the propositions I have made: I will also explain why I am deputed hither, and I do not think they will advise you to act otherwise than to accept them.' 'I consent,' said the earl, 'for such matters demand great consideration.'

The earl of Derby sent for those knights and squires in whom he had the most confidence, and in their presence desired the archbishop to repeat what he had just told him; which being done, he asked their advice how he should act. They unanimously answered,—'My lord, God has taken compassion on you: be careful how you refuse such offers, for you will never have more advantage-  
ous

ous ones made you. Whoever will examine your blood will find that it descends in a straight line from Saint Edward, king of England. Thank your good friends the Londoners for wishing to deliver you from exile, and for having pity on your children and the kingdom of England, which now is sorely troubled. Have you forgotten the many wrongs this Richard of Bordeaux has done you, and who does not dissemble his wishes to add to them daily. When your marriage with the lady Mary of Berry was on the point of being concluded, did he not send over the earl of Salisbury to break off the match, and to accuse you before the king and his whole court of being a false and wicked traitor? Such things are unpardonable, and you should rather seek for means of revenge. If you will not help yourself, no one will do it for you: consider well, therefore, all we have said.'

## CHAP. XIX.

THE EARL OF DERBY TAKES LEAVE OF THE  
KING AND LORDS OF FRANCE, TO VISIT HIS  
COUSIN THE DUKE OF BRITTANY.

THE earl of Derby's courage was raised on hearing his council thus boldly declare their opinion, and he said,—‘ I will do whatever you advise, for I have called you together to have your counsel.’ They unanimously answered, ‘ You say well; and we will advise you, according to circumstances, to the best of our power.’ After this, they carried on their business so very secretly that none of the household but those immediately concerned knew any thing of what was going forward. They consulted how they could cross the sea before any news of their intention should reach England, and whether to travel through Hainault and Holland, and embark at Dordrecht, or to go to Brittany under pretence of visiting the duke, sail from one of his ports, and land at Plymouth or any other place whither God might please to send them.

Every thing considered, they thought the road through Brittany the easiest accomplished; and they advised the earl, saying,—‘ My lord, you will take leave of the king of France, his brother and uncles, and thank them warmly for the affection and courtesy they have shewn you. After  
this,

this, you will request the king to grant you an escort to Brittany, to visit the duke and stay some time with him.'

The earl of Derby consented, and came to Paris, where all things were prepared for his departure: he waited on the king as usual whenever he pleased, for the doors of the palace were open to him at all hours. At this last visit, he talked to the king very ably, as he knew well how to do, as to his future plans, and said he would go and amuse himself in Brittany and visit the duke, whom he called his uncle, for he had married a sister to his father, daughter to king Edward. The king, not thinking he was plotting mischief, easily assented: and the earl, having requested an escort to Brittany, the king promised to give instant orders for one to be at his command. To shorten the matter, the earl managed his affairs with much discretion, and took leave of all the lords who were then at court: on his departure, he made very handsome presents to the king's officers, for he was bounden so to do; and to the heralds and minstrels resident in Paris, and who attended the farewell supper he gave at the hôtel de Clisson to such of the French knights as chose to partake of it.

These things done, on the next morning he and his attendants mounted their horses and left Paris by the gate of St. James, following the road to Estampes. A knight from Beauce, called sir Guy le Baveux, escorted them. They continued their journey

journey to Blois, where they remained eight days; for the earl had sent forward one of his knights, and a herald, to signify to the duke his intention of visiting him, and the circumstance of his being on the road.

The duke of Brittany was very happy to learn that his nephew the earl of Derby was coming to see him; for he was attached to him, and had always loved the duke of Lancaster and his other brothers. 'Why,' said the duke to the knight, whose name was sir William de la Perriere, 'has our nephew stopped on the road, since he intends to visit us, and has not come directly hither?' The knight excused him as well as he could; but the duke said,—'It is foolish; for there is no knight whom for these last seven years I should more gladly see in Brittany than my fair nephew the earl of Derby. Let him come to us with a hearty welcome, and he shall find my country and towns open and ready to receive him.'

The knight was well contented with this answer, and set out on his return as speedily as possible. On his arrival at Blois, he told the earl and his council the words of the duke of Brittany. On the morrow they mounted their horses, and left Blois, with the good wishes of the inhabitants, who had been paid most liberally for every thing they had wanted, and all were contented.

In company with the earl of Derby was sir Peter de Craon, who had been so much harassed by the parliament of Paris in his suit with the queen  
of

of Naples, that he was in a manner banished France, and all his castles and estates sequestered for payment of the one hundred thousand francs he was indebted to the queen, and various other heavy sums incidental to the costs and expences of this suit.

The earl of Derby journeyed on until he came to Nantes, where he met the duke of Brittany, who received him and his company with much joy. Sir Guy le Baveux returned to France, and the earl staid with the duke, who entertained him in the best manner. The archbishop of Canterbury accompanied the earl, but did not open himself to any one on the cause of his coming, so that it was a perfect secret excepting to the earl and his council. The duke, to show his love, spared no expense in entertaining his nephew and his attendants, although he knew king Richard was very wroth against him, for which he pitied him.

The earl, noticing the great affection of the duke, by the advice of his council discovered some parts of his plan, by way of sounding him on the subject. He asked his advice how to act in respect to his inheritances of the duchy of Lancaster and others which his father had held, and by right of succession had at his death devolved on him; but that the king, far from allowing him to have possession of them, had banished him from England, and was daily giving away the estates of his family to any who asked for them; that numbers of nobles and prelates were exceedingly discontented

with



with the king for this conduct, and that many parts of England were in a state of warfare against each other; that the good people of London had compassion on him, and had given him to understand they would cheerfully receive him, if he would return, and bring about a reconciliation between him and the king, and recover for him his inheritances.

When the duke of Brittany heard this, he replied,—‘ Fair nephew, the straightest road is always the best and surest. You are in a distressing situation, and ask advice: I therefore recommend you to trust to the Londoners: they are powerful, and will force king Richard, who, I understand, has behaved to you very unjustly, to do as they shall please, in conjunction with the prelates and nobles who are attached to you in England. I will assist you with vessels, men at arms and cross-bows, to convey you over the sea, and to defend you against any dangers you may meet with. The earl of Derby was very thankful to the duke of Brittany for this advice and offer.

## CHAP. XX.

THE EARL OF DERBY SAILS FROM BRITTANY TO ENGLAND.—HIS RECEPTION BY THE CITIZENS OF LONDON.

THUS were all things settled most amicably between the duke of Brittany and the earl of Derby, who staid some time with the duke, and gave out that he would remain longer; but, in the mean time, his purveyances were preparing at a distant sea-port, which I believe was Vannes, whither the duke and earl came when all things were ready. When the wind was favourable for England, the earl and his attendants embarked on board the vessel prepared for him. He was to be escorted by three ships full of men at arms and cross-bows, as far as the coasts of England.

The fleet, having weighed anchor, put to sea, and the farther they advanced towards England, the more favourable was the wind, so that, within two days and as many nights, they arrived at Plymouth, where they landed few at a time, and entered the town\*. The bailiff of Plymouth, to whom the king had intrusted the guard of the town, was astonished to see so many men at arms and cross-bows; but the archbishop of Canterbury satisfied him, by saying they were men at arms

---

\* This is a mistake: he probably coasted England, and landed at Ravenspurn in Yorkshire, between Hull and Bridlington.

whom

whom the duke of Brittany had sent for the good of the realm, and to serve the king and country. The bailiff's suspicions were lulled; and the earl so disguised himself that he was not discovered by any of the townsmen, and retired to a private chamber, where he remained shut up. The archbishop, on their arrival at Plymouth, instantly wrote letters, signed and sealed by him, which he dispatched by one of his servants to London, to inform the citizens of the earl's landing.

The messenger made such haste, by changing horses in the different towns he passed through, that he arrived at London by break of day on the following morning. He entered the city by London-bridge gate, which was not shut, and went to the house of the mayor, who was in bed; but, on hearing a messenger was come from the archbishop, he leaped out of it, and ordered the man into his chamber, who gave him the letters from the archbishop. The mayor opened and read their contents with pleasure, and, instantly dressing himself, sent off his servants with the intelligence of the earl of Derby's landing to the houses of those who had been the most active in sending for him. All were rejoiced at the news; and about two hundred of the principal citizens assembled, who held no long council, for the case did not require it, but cried out,—‘Come, let us hasten to make ourselves ready, and go and meet our lord of Lancaster, since we have invited him hither. The archbishop of Canterbury has done well to bring him; and let the earl's arrival be made known

known to such gallant lords and knights as are desirous to see him, and have him for their sovereign.

Many persons were then selected to publish this intelligence, and carry it to the barons, knights and squires of their party. Upwards of five hundred Londoners mounted their horses, and were so impatient to see the earl of Derby, that they would scarcely wait one for another.

The earl made no long stay at Plymouth, but on the morrow, when the horses were disembarked, mounted them and took the road to London. Sir Peter de Craon and the Bretons still accompanied the earl of Derby.

The mayor of London and the chief citizens were the first who met the earl and the archbishop on the road. The meeting was very affectionate on both sides; and as they rode onward, they met more of the Londoners. They lay the first night at Guildford, twenty-eight miles from London. On the morrow, all the city of London knew that the earl of Derby was coming thither, and men, women, children and clergy, dressed in their best clothes, went to meet him, so eager were they to see him. The moment he came in sight, they shouted out, "Welcome long-wished for earl of Derby and duke of Lancaster: may all joy and prosperity attend you!" They said,—that ever since he had left England nothing good had befallen it: by him all things would be restored, and put on a proper footing; for we have lived in a wretched

wretched state by the miserable councils of Richard of Bordeaux, but he is most blameable himself; for a king, to succeed in the good government of his kingdom, should have sense and discretion enough to distinguish between good and evil, otherwise he is unfit to wear a crown; but this Richard has, in many respects, acted wrong from design, as shall be proved against him.'

Such were the greetings the earl of Derby had on his approach to London. The mayor of London rode by the side of the earl, to the delight of the people, who were pleased to see how kindly they were received. The mayor said, 'See, my lord, how much the people are rejoiced at your arrival.' 'It is very true,' replied the earl. As he advanced, he bowed his head to the right and left, and noticed all comers with kindness.

In this state they arrived in London, when the earl was escorted to his house; and every one retired to his own until he had dined. Then the mayor, the chief magistrates of London, and many barons, knights, bishops, abbots, at the time in town, came to see the earl and congratulate him. The duchess of Gloucester and her two daughters, who were his cousins german, waited likewise on him; but their brother Humphrey was with the king on his expedition to Ireland, more through constraint than love. With these ladies came the countess of Arundel and some of her children, as did

did the lady Warwick and many other ladies resident in London. The whole town was so rejoiced at the earl's return, that every shop was shut, and no more work done than if it had been Easter-day.

---

## CHAP. XXI.

THE EARL OF DERBY, NOW DUKE OF LANCASTER, UNDERTAKES THE GOVERNMENT OF ENGLAND, AND, BY THE AID OF THE LONDONERS, DETERMINES TO SEIZE THE THRONE.—HE MARCHES IN ARMS AGAINST KING RICHARD AT BRISTOL.

TO bring this matter to a conclusion, it was determined to march against the king, whom the citizens of London and other towns called by no other title than Richard of Bordeaux; and the lower classes had such a hatred to him, as not to be able to speak of him but in his dispraise. The Londoners already treated the earl of Derby as their king, and had formed resolutions accordingly.

The earl of Derby engaged to undertake the government of England on condition the crown was settled on him and his heirs for ever, which the Londoners swore to observe, under their hands and seals, and promised that the rest of England

should do the same in so solemn a manner that there never should be a question concerning it: they also promised him assistance in men and money.

These obligations having been entered into on each side, which did not take much time, for they were in haste to free themselves, twelve hundred \*, well armed and mounted, were ordered to accompany the earl of Derby towards Bristol, to make Richard of Bordeaux a prisoner, and conduct him to London. When there, he should be legally tried before the nobles, prelates and commons of England, and judged according to the proof of the charges laid against him.

It was also ordered, to avoid slanderous reports, that the men at arms and cross-bows, who had been lent by the duke of Brittany to the earl, as his escort, should be sent back, for they had men sufficient for the purpose they were about. The earl, in consequence, called the Bretons before him, thanked them warmly for the services they had rendered him, and, on their departure, gave them so much money that they were contented. They returned to their vessels at Plymouth, and thence sailed to Brittany.

The earl of Derby was prepared to march to Bristol as commander in chief of these Londoners, for he was more interested in the matter than any one else, and set out in grand array.

---

\* Twelve hundred,—the MSS. say twelve thousand, which is more probable.



He pressed his march as much as he could, and was joined by all the countries he passed through. News was carried to the army of king Richard, of the march of the earl of Derby and the Londoners; but it was known to many knights, squires and archers, before the king; and several heard it who were afraid to tell him. When it became more public, there were many murmurings in the army; and those about the person of the king were exceedingly alarmed, for they now saw matters were ripe with every mischief and danger to the king and to themselves. They knew they had many enemies in the kingdom; and that such as had hitherto kept up fair appearances, now the earl of Derby was come back, would turn against them. Thus did it happen; for numbers of knights and squires who had served the king in this campaign, dissembled, and quitted him without taking leave, or saying they were going away. Some retired to their houses, and others went straight to the earl of Derby and joined his army.

As soon as Humphrey of Gloucester, and Richard of Arundel, son to the late earl, knew for certain of the earl of Derby's approach, they left the king, and never stopped until they had joined him. The earl and his army had passed Oxford, and were then at a town called Cirencester: he had great joy in receiving his cousins, and asked the state of king Richard, where he was, and how they had managed to quit him. They replied, that they had not spoken to him of their departure;

but the moment they had heard of his march, they had mounted their horses, and hastened to offer him their services, and to revenge the loss of their fathers, whom Richard of Bordeaux had put to death.

The earl bade them welcome, and said,—‘ We will mutually assist each other. Richard of Bordeaux must be carried to London, for so have I promised the Londoners, and will keep my word, and they are willing to aid me with all their power. We have men enough to fight with him; and, if he wish it, we will give him battle.’

---

## CHAP. XXII.

KING RICHARD IS INFORMED THAT THE EARL OF DERBY IS MARCHING AGAINST HIM WITH A POWERFUL ARMY.—HE RETIRES TO FLINT-CASTLE \*.

**W**HEN matters could not longer be concealed, it was told to king Richard,—‘ Sire, take care of yourself: you must have good and speedy counsel, for the Londoners have risen with a mighty power, and intend to march against you. They have elected the earl of Derby, your cousin, their commander, and by his advice they act:

---

\* It was Conway-castle to which Richard retired.

you may be assured that some strong treaties have been entered into between them since he has crossed the sea by their invitation.'

The king was thunderstruck at hearing this, and knew not what answer to make; for his courage forsook him, and he foresaw affairs would end badly unless proper steps were immediately taken. Having mused a while, he replied to the knights who had given him this information,—  
 'Instantly make ready our men at arms and archers, and issue a special summons throughout the kingdom for the assembling of all my vassals, as I will not fly before my subjects.' 'By God,' answered the knights, 'every thing goes badly, for your men are leaving you and running off. You have already lost half your army, and the remainder are panicstruck and wavering.' 'What can I do then?' asked the king. 'We will tell you, sire: quit the field, for you cannot hold it longer, and make for one of your castles, where you can remain until your brother, sir John Holland, who is enterprising and courageous, and must now have heard of the rebellion, come to you: he will, by force or negotiations, bring your affairs into a different state from that in which they are at present. When it is known that he has taken the field, many who have fled from you will join him.'

The king agreed to this advice. The earl of Salisbury was not then with him, but in another part of the country; and, when he heard that the earl of Derby was marching a large army against the king, he judged things would turn out badly

for his master, and for all who had been his advisers. He therefore remained quiet, waiting for further intelligence.

The duke of York had not accompanied the king on this expedition : but his son, the earl of Rutland, had been induced to join him, for two reasons ; one, in return for the great affection king Richard had shewn him ; the other, because he was constable of England. It was, therefore, necessary he should attend his king.

Other news was brought the king, as he supped : they said,—‘ Sire, you must determine how you will act ; for your army is as nothing compared to the force marching against you, and a combat will be of no avail, and appease the malcontents as you have formerly done, by kind words and fair promises, and punish them afterwards at your leisure. There is a castle twelve miles from hence, called Flint, that is tolerably strong : we therefore advise that you fly thither and remain shut up as long as you please, or until you hear other news from sir John Holland and your friends. We will send to Ireland for succour ; and when the king of France, your father-in-law, shall hear of your distress, he will assist you.’

King Richard listened to this advice, and thought it good : he selected such as he wished to accompany him, and ordered the earl of Rutland to remain at Bristol with the remnant of the army, ready prepared to advance when they should hear other news, or when they should be sufficiently strong to combat their enemies.

These

These commands were obeyed; and the king, attended by his household only, departed on the ensuing morning for Flint-castle, which they entered without shewing any appearance of making war on any one, but solely to defend themselves and the place, should they be attacked\*.

---

## CHAP. XXIII.

KING RICHARD SURRENDERS HIMSELF TO THE  
EARL OF DERBY, TO BE CONDUCTED TO  
LONDON.

THE earl of Derby and the Londoners had spies who brought them daily accounts of the state of the king, which were confirmed by knights and squires, who had left his army to join the earl. The intelligence of the king having fled to Flint-castle was soon known to him; and that he had there shut himself up with a few men at arms, of his household, shewing no symptoms of making war, but to get out of his difficulties, if possible, by a treaty.

The earl was advised to march thither, and get possession of his person by force or otherwise. This was followed; and, when the army was within two miles of Flint, they came to a village, where they

---

\* This account of Froissart is very incorrect, and I refer to the different English chronicles.

halted, and the earl refreshed himself with meat and drink. He there resolved in his own mind, without consulting others, to march with only two hundred horse, leaving the rest behind, and, when near the castle wherein the king was, to endeavour, by fair speeches, to enter the castle, and cajole the king to come forth and trust to him, who would insure him against all perils on his road to London, engaging that he should not suffer any bodily harm, and promising to mediate between him and the Londoners, who were greatly enraged against him. This plan was approved of by those to whom he mentioned it; but he was told,—‘My lord, beware of any dissimulation in the business: Richard of Bordeaux must be taken, dead or alive, with all the traitors who have been his advisers, and conducted to the Tower of London. Neither the Londoners nor we will hear any thing to the contrary.’

The earl of Derby replied,—‘Do not fear; what I have proposed shall be executed: If I can, by fair words, get him out of the castle, I will do it; but, if he refuse to listen to me, I shall instantly make you acquainted with it. You will advance the main army immediately, and we will besiege the castle, and by assault have him dead or alive, for the place is to be taken.’

The Londoners were now satisfied, and the earl left the army with two hundred horse. They soon came before the castle, where the king was shut up in one of the chambers much cast down. The earl and his men rode to the gate, which was closed,



closed, for the case required it, and knocked loudly. Those within asked, 'Who is there?' The earl replied, 'I am Henry of Lancaster, and am come to demand from the king my inheritance of the duchy of Lancaster. Tell him so from me.' 'My lord,' answered those who heard him, 'we will cheerfully do it,' and instantly ascended to the hall where the king was with those of his knights that had for a long time been his chief counsellors, and related the message, for he was eager to hear who had so rudely knocked at the gate—'Sire, it is your cousin the earl of Derby, who is come to demand his inheritance from you.'

The king looked at his knights, and asked how he should act. 'Sire,' replied they, 'this request is no way improper: you may allow him to come into your presence, with only eleven others, and hear what he has to say. He is your cousin, and a great lord of the country, and can besides, if he please, make up all differences; for he is exceedingly beloved in England, more especially by the Londoners, who sent for him beyond sea, and are now in rebellion against you. You must dissemble until matters be appeased, and the earl of Huntingdon, your brother, arrived. It is unfortunate for him and you that he is at this moment at Calais; for there are many in England who now rebel against you, that, were he by your side, would remain quiet, and not dare take any part. He is married to the sister of the earl of Derby, and, by his good sense and exertions, we hope  
and



and suppose he will make peace between you and your people.'

The king consented to this proposal, and said, 'Go to him: have the gates opened that he and eleven more may enter.' Two knights then left the king, and, crossing the court of the castle, came to the gate, and had the wicket opened. Having passed it, they bowed to the earl of Derby and to his knights, addressing them in courteous language; for they felt they had no force to resist them, and that they were hated by the Londoners. They wished therefore to accommodate matters by fair speeches and outward appearances. They said to the earl; 'My lord, what is your pleasure? The king is at mass, and has sent us hither to speak with you.'

'I will tell you,' answered the earl. 'You know that I ought to have possession of the duchy of Lancaster: I am come partly on that account, and on some other business I wish to speak of to the king.' 'My lord,' replied they, 'you are welcome: the king will see and hear you with pleasure, and has told us that you and eleven more may enter the castle.' The earl said it pleased him; and he and eleven others passed the wicket, which was instantly shut on the others who remained without.

Consider the great risk and danger the earl of Derby ran, for they could as easily have slain him, when in the castle, (which they should have done, right or wrong) and his companions, as birds in a cage.

cage. He never thought of the peril he was in, but went straight forward, and was conducted to the king. The king, on seeing him, changed colour, as one who knew he had greatly misconducted himself. The earl spoke aloud, without paying any reverence or honour to the king, and asked him, 'Have you broken your fast?' The king answered, 'No: it is yet early morn: why do you ask?' 'It is time you should breakfast,' replied the earl, 'for you have a long way to ride.' 'What road?' said the king. 'You must come to London,' answered the earl; 'and I advise that you eat and drink heartily, to perform the journey more gaily.' The king was now very melancholy, and frightened at these words: he said, 'I am not as yet hungry, nor have I any desire to eat.' The knights, desirous to flatter the earl of Derby, (perceiving things were taking a serious turn) said, 'Sire, have confidence in my lord of Lancaster, your cousin, for he can but wish your good.' 'Well,' said the king, 'I am willing so to do: have the tables covered.'

They hastened to obey these orders; and the king washed his hands, seated himself at table, and was served. They asked the earl if he would not be seated, and eat. He said, 'no; for that he had breakfasted.' During the time the king was eating (which was not long, for his heart was too much oppressed to eat) the whole country was covered with men at arms and archers, who could be plainly seen from the windows of the castle. The king, on rising from table, perceived them,  
and

and asked his cousin the earl who they were. He replied, 'For the most part Londoners.' 'And what do they want?' said the king. 'They want to take you,' answered the earl, 'and carry you to the Tower of London, and there is not any means of pacifying them, unless you consent to go.' 'No!' replied the king, who was much frightened at hearing this, for he knew the Londoners hated him, and continued, 'cannot you, cousin, prevent this? I would not willingly yield myself into their hands; for I am aware they hate me, and have done so for a long time, although I am their sovereign.'

The earl of Derby answered,—'I see no other way to prevent it, but to surrender yourself to me, and, when they know you are my prisoner, they will not do you any harm. You must make preparations to be conducted and imprisoned in the Tower of London with your attendants.' The king, not knowing how to act in his distress, and fearing the Londoners would put him to death, yielded himself prisoner to the earl of Derby, promising to do whatever he should advise. His knights, squires and officers, surrendered in like manner, to avoid greater danger. The earl, in the presence of those who had accompanied him, received the king and his attendants as his prisoners, and ordered the horses to be instantly saddled, brought to the court, and the gates of the castle to be thrown open, on which many men at arms and archers entered it.

The earl of Derby now issued a proclamation,  
that

that no one should dare to touch any thing in the castle, or lay hands on any servant or officer of the king, under pain of being instantly hanged, for that every person and thing were under his special protection and guard. This was obeyed, for there was not one bold enough to act contrary.

The earl conducted his cousin, king Richard, down stairs to the court of the castle, continuing in close conversation with him, where he had his usual state, without the smallest change having been made in it. While they were saddling the horses, and making ready, they talked on different subjects, and were much looked at by the Londoners.

I heard of a singular circumstance that happened, which I must mention. King Richard had a greyhound called Math \*, beautiful beyond measure, who would not notice nor follow any one but the king. Whenever the king rode abroad, the greyhound was loosed by the person who had him in charge, and ran instantly to caress him, by placing his two fore feet on his shoulders. It fell out, that as the king and the duke of Lancaster were conversing in the court of the castle, their horses being ready for them to mount, the grey-

---

\* The Museum MSS. call this greyhound Blemach, mine Mach. The greyhound seems to have been a favourite prognosticator in these times; for, when the armies of the two rivals, John of Montford and Charles de Blois, were on the point of engaging, the lord Charles's greyhound left him and caressed John of Montford, who gained the battle.

hound was untied, but, instead of running as usual to the king, he left him, and leaped to the duke of Lancaster's shoulders, paying him every court, and careſſing him as he was formerly uſed to careſſ the king. The duke, not acquainted with this greyhound, asked the king the meaning of his fondneſs, ſaying, 'What does this mean?' 'Couſin,' replied the king, 'it means a great deal for you, and very little for me.' 'How!' ſaid the duke: 'pray explain it.' 'I underſtand by it,' answered the king, 'that this greyhound fondles and pays his court to you this day as king of England, which you will ſurely be, and I ſhall be depoſed, for the natural inſtinct of the dog ſhews it to him. Keep him therefore by your ſide, for he will now leave me, and follow you.'

The duke of Lancaſter treaſured up what the king had ſaid, and paid attention to the greyhound, who would never more follow Richard of Bordeaux, but kept by the ſide of the duke of Lancaſter, as was witneſſed by thirty thouſand men.

## CHAP. XXIV.

THE LADY OF COUCY IS TAKEN AWAY FROM  
THE YOUNG QUEEN OF ENGLAND, AND A  
NEW HOUSEHOLD APPOINTED FOR HER.—  
KING RICHARD IS CONFINED IN THE TOWER  
OF LONDON.

HAVING mounted their horses, they departed from Flint-castle, and Henry duke of Lancaster, whom we shall no longer call earl of Derby, rode by the king's side, and at times conversed with him. They were surrounded by a large body of men at arms and archers. Those of the king's party advanced by themselves, and the first town they lay at was Oxford \*; for the duke of Lancaster

---

\* After the king had been carried to the duke of Lancaster at Chester, on the third day the duke departed with his prisoner thence to Nantwich; the next day to Newcastle, and there the earl of Warwick's son met them; and so journeying forth, the next day they came to Stafford, and after they departed to Lichfield, where the king thought to have escaped, slipping down into a garden, out of a window of a great tower; but he was espied, and brought into the tower again. From Lichfield, the duke went to Coventry; but, before they could come thither, the Welshmen did them much mischief, and slew many of them; and the Englishmen, when they by great chance could take any of them, they tied to their horses' tails, and drew them after them through ways full of stones, and caused them to die miserably.

The duke passed from Coventry to Daventry, the next day to Northampton, from thence to Dunstable, and then to Saint Albans. Within five or six miles before his coming to London,

Lancaſter avoided all the large towns and caſtles, by keeping in the open country, for fear of inſurrections of the people. The duke diſbanded a great part of his army, ſaying, ‘ he had enough for the completion of his buſineſs, as the king could not now fly nor eſcape from him. We will carry him and his adviſers to London, and ſecurely place them in the Tower. They are my priſoners, and I can take them any where: return, therefore, to your homes until you ſhall again hear from me.’

All aſſented to this propoſal of the duke, who took the direct road to Windſor; and the Londoners, except thoſe he had kept with him, went to their homes. The duke of Lancaſter, on leaving Windſor, did not follow the road to Colnbrook, but that to Shene, and dined with the king at Chertſey. King Richard had earneſtly requeſted his couſin not to carry him through London, which was the reaſon they had gone this road.

As ſoon as the Londoners were maſters of the king, they ſent ſome of the principal citizens to queen Iſabella, who reſided with the lady of Coucy at Leeds-caſtle. She was next in rank to the queen; and they addreſſed her,—‘ Lady, make preparations of departure, for you muſt not longer remain here. Take care, on quitting the queen, that you ſhew not any tokens of anger at being diſmiſſed,

---

don, the mayor and the companies in their liveries, with great noiſe of trumpets, met the duke, doing more reverence to him than to the king, rejoicing that God had ſent them ſuch a prince, that had conquered the realm within one month’s



dismissed; but say, that your husband and daughter have sent for you. This we advise you to do, if you regard your life; for, should you act any way contrary, it will be forfeited. You have no need to ask questions, nor make inquiries: you shall be conducted to Dover, and embark on board a passage-boat to convey you to Boulogne.'

The lady of Coucy, afraid of these menaces, and knowing those who made them to be cruel and full of hatred, replied, 'that in God's name, she would do as they wished.' Preparations were soon made: palfreys and hackneys were provided for herself and attendants; and all the French of both sexes set off, escorted as far as Dover, when they were liberally paid, according to their degrees. The first tide, they embarked on board a vessel, with a favourable wind to Boulogne. The household of the queen was thus broken up, and neither French nor English were left with her who were attached to king Richard. A new one was formed of ladies, damsels, officers and varlets, who were strictly enjoined never to mention the name of king Richard in their conversations with her.

The duke of Lancaster and his company, on their departure from Chertsey, rode to Shene, and, during the night, conducted the king and such of his knights and others as they wished to confine, to the Tower of London. On the morrow, the Londoners heard the king was in the Tower, and were much rejoiced; but there were many murmurings that he had been brought thither privately, and the people were very angry with the duke of Lancaster because he had not carried him

publicly through the streets in open day, not to do him honour, but that they might shew their scorn, so much was he hated by them.

Consider how serious a thing it is when the people rise up in arms against their sovereign, more especially such a people as the English. In such a case, there is no remedy; for they are the worst people in the world, the most obstinate and presumptuous; and of all England the Londoners are the leaders, for, to say the truth, they are very powerful in men and in wealth. In the city and neighbourhood, there are twenty-four thousand men, completely armed from head to foot, and full thirty thousand archers. This is a great force, and they are bold and courageous; and the more blood is spilt, the greater their courage.

---

## CHAP. XXV.

THE EARL OF RUTLAND, CONSTABLE OF ENGLAND, HEARING THE KING HAS SURRENDERED, DISMISSES HIS MEN AT ARMS.—FOUR KNIGHTS OF THE KING'S CHAMBER, HAVING BEEN PUT TO DEATH BY THE LONDONERS, HE IS ADVISED BY THOSE WHO WERE IMPRISONED WITH HIM TO RESIGN HIS CROWN TO THE DUKE OF LANCASTER.

WE will speak of the earl of Rutland, son to the duke of York, at this time constable of England, who had remained at Bristol with his brother-

brother-in-law the lord de Spencer, and their men. When they learnt that the castle the king had retired to was invested, and that the king, on his surrendering, was carried to London, they instantly foresaw the event, and that it must end badly for king Richard.

They determined not to stay longer where they were, but dismissing their men at arms, except such as were attached to their persons, left Bristol, and rode to a very handsome seat\* the lord de Spencer had in Wales, where they remained until they heard other intelligence.

The duke of York resided at his own castle with his people, and interfered not in what was passing in the country, nor had done so for a long time, but taking all things as they happened, although he was very much vexed that there should be such great differences between his nephew, the king, and his relations.

We will return to king Richard. When the duke of Lancaster had imprisoned him and those of his council in the Tower, and placed sure guards over them, the first thing he did was to recal the earl of Warwick from his banishment, and to give him his liberty. He next sent to summon the earl of Percy and his son sir Harry Percy to attend him, which they did. He then enquired how he could lay hands on those four companions who had

---

\* D. Sauvage calls this seat Heulle. My MS. says only a very handsome manor, which I suppose must have been Caerphilly in Glamorganshire.

strangled his uncle in the castle of Calais, and at length succeeded in arresting the whole four, and would not have taken twenty thousand nobles for their deliverance. He had them confined in separate prisons in London.

The duke then consulted with his council and the citizens what should be done with Richard of Bordeaux, who was confined in the great Tower of London, wherein king John of France was once imprisoned, during the campaign of king Edward in France. It was resolved that the king should be deprived of all his state and outward marks of royalty, if they wished to act prudently, for the news of his arrest would make a great noise throughout Christendom, as they had acknowledged him twenty-two years as their king, and now held him a prisoner.

They examined the whole acts of his reign, and drew up twenty-eight articles against him, with which they came to the Tower, accompanied by the duke of Lancaster, and some knights and squires of his council. They entered the king's apartment without speaking to him, or paying any kind of respect, and read to him these charges. He did not deny them, for he knew they were true, but said that every thing he had done was by the advice of his council.

He was told to name those who had been his principal advisers, which he did, hoping to escape by throwing the blame on them, as he had formerly done, and they to receive the punishment; but this was not the intention of those Londoners who



who had confined him. At this time they said nothing further, but went away: the duke of Lancaster to his own house, leaving the mayor and men of law to act as they pleased.

The mayor went to the town-house of London, called the Guildhall, where justice is administered to the citizens, followed by crowds of people, expecting something effective to be done, as indeed there was. I will detail what passed. First, all the articles which had been drawn up against the king and read to him, were again read aloud, with comments by the person who read them, adding, that the king had not denied their truth, but confessed he had done them through the advice of four knights of his chamber, by whose counsels he had put to death the duke of Gloucester, the earl of Arundel and sir Thomas Corbet, and that they had for a long time excited him to these acts. Such deeds were unpardonable, and must be punished; for by them and their fellows had the courts of justice been shut at Westminster, and all the other royal courts throughout England, which had caused great mischiefs, and encouraged bands of robbers, to pillage merchants travelling from town to town, and to plunder the houses of farmers. By these means the kingdom of England had been almost irrecoverably ruined; and it was to be supposed, from this wanton neglect of England, that Calais or Guisnes, or both, would have been given up to their enemies the French.

Such speeches as the above made an impression on the minds of the people, so that many of the

discontented said,—‘ These things are deserving punishment, that others might take example; and Richard of Bordeaux has so much disgraced himself, that he is unworthy of wearing a crown, and ought to be deprived of all honours, and confined to pass his future life on bread and water, and subsist on that as he could.’ Some of the lower classes cried out,—‘ Sir mayor, you and your companions, who are the distributors of justice, look that it be done: we insist upon it, and spare no man. You see, by what you have told us, that the case requires it, and immediately, for they have convicted themselves.’

The mayor and the lawyers retired to the judgment-seat, and the four knights were condemned to death. They were sentenced to be brought before the apartment of the Tower of London in which king Richard was confined, that he might see them from the windows, and thence drawn on sledges by horses through the streets to Cheapside, each person separately, and there beheaded, their heads affixed to spikes on London-bridge, and their bodies hung on a gibbet, and there left.

When this sentence was pronounced, they hastened to execute it. Every thing being prepared, the mayor of London, and the lords who had assisted him in this judgment, set out from Guildhall with a large body of people, and came to the Tower of London, where they seized the four knights of the king, sir Bernard Brocas, the lord Marclais, master John Derby, receiver of Lincoln, and the lord Stelle, steward of the king’s household,

hold. They were brought into the court, and each tied to two horses, in the sight of all in the Tower, who were eye-witnesses of it as well as the king, who were much displeased, and in despair; for the remainder of the king's knights that were with him looked for similar treatment, so cruel and revengeful did they know the Londoners to be.

Without saying a word, these four were dragged from the Tower, through the streets to Cheapside, and, on a fishmonger's stall, had their heads struck off, which were placed over the gate on London-bridge, and their bodies hung on a gibbet. After this execution every man retired to his home.

King Richard was much afflicted at finding himself in such danger from the citizens, and that his power was completely gone. He saw that all England was against him; and, if he had some few friends left, they could not assist him, for his enemies were too numerous. Those about him said; 'Sire, we have not, as it seems, any great hope of saving our lives. When your cousin of Lancaster prevailed on you to yield yourself up to him, he promised that you and twelve of your knights should be his own prisoners, and no harm done to them: of these, four have just been put to a disgraceful death: we must expect the same, and will give you our reasons for it. The Londoners, who have urged him to do this deed, have made him enter into such engagements with them that he cannot act in any other manner. God will be very merciful to us if we are suffered to



die here a natural death, for to die a disgraceful one makes us shudder.'

King Richard, on hearing them thus talk, wept bitterly, wrung his hands, and cursed the hour he had been born, when his end was so miserable. Those around him pitied his distress, and comforted him as well as they were able. One of his knights said—'Sire, you must not be too much cast down. We see, as well as you, that this world is nothing, and that the fickleness of fortune is wonderful, sparing neither princes nor poor persons. The king of France, whose daughter you have married, cannot at this moment assist you, for he is too far off. If you can, by dissembling, escape from this peril, and save your life and ours, you will act well; and, within a year or two, your fortune may change.'

'What would you have me do?' replied the king, 'for there is nothing I will not attempt to save us.'

'Sire, we tell you for a truth, that from every appearance, the Londoners want to crown your cousin of Lancaster their king; and with this intent they sent for him from France, and have aided him in all his exploits. Now it is impossible, that so long as you shall be alive, this coronation can take place without your consent. Suppose, therefore, you were to offer your cousin terms, that we might escape the imminent danger we are in, and that you send to speak with him on business. On his coming, treat him affectionately, and say that you wish to resign the crown into his hands,

hands, and that he be king : by this means, you will soften him and appease the citizens. You will earnestly beg, that he allow you to finish your days here, or elsewhere ; and for us to remain with you, or be separated, or banished abroad for our lives, at his pleasure ; for he who loseth his life loseth every thing.'

King Richard heard these words with comfort to his heart, and said he would act accordingly, for he saw his danger was very great. He gave his keepers to understand he would willingly speak with the duke of Lancaster.

---

## CHAP. XXVI.

KING RICHARD OF ENGLAND RESIGNS HIS CROWN AND KINGDOM INTO THE HANDS OF THE DUKE OF LANCASTER.

**I**NTELLIGENCE was carried to the duke of Lancaster that Richard of Bourdeaux had a great desire to speak with him. The duke left his house in the evening, entered his barge with his knights, and was rowed down the Thames to the Tower, which he entered by a postern gate, and went to the apartment of the king.

The king received him with great kindness, and humbled himself exceedingly like to one who perceives he is in a dangerous state. He addressed him

him—' Cousin, I have been considering my situation, which is miserable enough, and I have no longer any thoughts of wearing my crown or governing my people. As God may have my soul, I wish I were at this moment dead of a natural death, and the king of France had his daughter again; for we have never enjoyed any great happiness together, nor since I have brought her hither have I had the love my people bore me formerly. Cousin of Lancaster, when I look back, I am convinced I have behaved very ill to you, and to other nobles of my blood, for which I cannot expect peace nor pardon. All things, therefore, considered, I am willing freely to resign to you the crown of England; and I beg you will accept the resignation as a gift.'

The duke replied, ' that it would be necessary the three estates of the realm should hear this. I have issued summonses for the assembling the nobles, prelates and deputies, from the principal towns; and within three days a sufficiency will be collected for you to make your resignation in due form. By this act, you will greatly appease the hatred of the nation against you. To obviate the mischiefs that had arisen from the courts of justice being shut, and which had created an almost universal anarchy, was I sent for from beyond sea. The people wanted to crown me, for the common report in the country is, that I have a better right to the crown than you have. This was told to our grandfather, king Edward of happy memory, when he educated you, and had you acknowledged  
 heir

heir to the throne; but his love was so strong for his son, the prince of Wales, nothing could make him alter his purpose, but that you must be king. If you had followed the example of the prince, or attended to the advice of his counsellors, like a good son, who should be anxious to tread in the steps of a father, you might still have been king; but you have always acted so contrary, as to occasion the rumour to be generally believed throughout England and elsewhere, that you are not the son of the prince of Wales, but of a priest or canon.

‘ I have heard several knights, who were of the household of my uncle the prince, declare, that he was jealous of the princess’s conduct. She was cousin-german to king Edward, who began to dislike her for not having children by his son, since he had, by her former marriage with sir Thomas Holland, stood god-father to two sons. She knew well how to keep the prince in her chains, having, through subtlety, enticed him to marry; but, fearful of being divorced by his father, for want of heirs, and that the prince would marry again, it was said she got connected with some one, by whom she had you and another son, who died in his infancy, and no judgment can be formed of his character: but you, from your manners and mode of acting, so contrary to the gallantry and prowess of the prince, are thought to be the son of a priest or canon; for, at the time of your birth, there were many young  
and

and handsome ones in the household of the prince at Bourdeaux.

‘Such is the report of this country, which your conduct has confirmed; for you have ever shewn great affection to the French, and an inclination to live on good terms with them, to the loss and dishonour of England. Because my uncle of Gloucester and the earl of Arundel wished you would loyally defend the honour of the kingdom, by following the steps of your ancestors, you have treacherously put them to death.

‘With regard to me, I have taken you under my protection, and will guard and preserve your life, through compassion, as long as I shall be able. I will likewise entreat the Londoners in your behalf, and the heirs of those you have put to death.’

‘Many thanks,’ answered the king: ‘I have greater confidence in you than in any other person in England.’ ‘You are in the right,’ replied the duke; ‘for, had I not stepped forward between you and the people, they would have seized you, and disgracefully killed you, in return for all your wicked acts, which are the cause of the dangerous state you are now in.’

King Richard heard all this patiently, for he saw that neither arguments nor force could avail, and that resignation and humility were his only arms. He therefore humbled himself exceedingly to the duke, earnestly begging that his life might be spared. The duke of Lancaster remained with

with the king upwards of two hours, and continued in his conversation to reproach him for all the faults he was accused of. He then took leave, re-entered his barge, and returned to his house, and, on the morrow, renewed his orders for the assembly of the three estates of the realm.

The duke of York, and his son the earl of Rutland, came to London, as did the earl of Northumberland and his brother, sir Thomas Percy, to whom the duke of Lancaster gave a hearty welcome; with numbers of prelates, bishops and abbots. The duke of Lancaster, accompanied by a large body of dukes, prelates, earls, barons, knights and principal citizens, rode to the Tower of London, and dismounted in the court. King Richard was released from his prison, and entered the hall which had been prepared for the occasion, royally dressed, the sceptre in his hand, and the crown on his head, but without supporters on either side. He addressed the company as follows: ‘ I have reigned king of England, duke of Aquitaine, and lord of Ireland, about twenty-two years, which royalty, lordship, sceptre and crown, I now freely and willingly resign to my cousin, Henry of Lancaster, and entreat of him, in the presence of you all, to accept this sceptre.’

He then tendered the sceptre to the duke of Lancaster, who took it and gave it to the archbishop of Canterbury. King Richard next raised the crown with his two hands from his head, and, placing

placing it before him, said, ‘ Henry, fair cousin, and duke of Lancaster, I present and give to you this crown, with which I was crowned king of England, and all the rights dependant on it.’

The duke of Lancaster received it, and delivered it over to the archbishop of Canterbury, who was at hand to take it. These two things being done, and the resignation accepted, the duke of Lancaster called in a public notary, that an authentic act should be drawn up of this proceeding, and witnessed by the lords and prelates then present. Soon after, the king was conducted to where he had come from, and the duke and other lords mounted their horses to return home. The two jewels were safely packed up, and given to proper guards, to place them in the treasury of Westminster abbey, until they should be called for when the parliament were assembled.



## CHAP. XXVII.

A PARLIAMENT MEETS AT WESTMINSTER, WHEN THE DUKE OF LANCASTER IS PUBLICLY ACKNOWLEDGED KING OF ENGLAND.—THE GREAT MAGNIFICENCE OF HIS CORONATION.

ON a Wednesday, the last day of September 1399, Henry duke of Lancaster held a parliament at Westminster; at which were assembled the greater part of the clergy and nobility of England, and a sufficient number of deputies from the different towns, according to their extent and wealth.

In this parliament, the duke of Lancaster challenged the crown of England, and claimed it as his own, for three reasons: first, by conquest; secondly, from being the right heir to it; and, thirdly, from the pure and free resignation of it to him, by king Richard, in the presence of the prelates, dukes and earls in the hall of the Tower of London. These three claims being made, he required the parliament to declare their opinion and will. Upon this, they unanimously replied, that it was their will he should be king, for they would have no other. He again asked, if they were positive in this declaration; and, when they said they were, he seated himself on the royal throne. This throne was elevated some feet from the floor, with  
a rich

a rich canopy of cloth of gold, so that he could be seen by all present. On the king's taking his seat, the people clapped their hands for joy, and held them up, promising him fealty and homage. The parliament was then dissolved, and the day of coronation appointed for the feast of Saint Edward, which fell on a Monday, the 13th of October.

On the Saturday before the coronation, the new king went from Westminster to the Tower of London, attended by great numbers, and those squires who were to be knighted watched their arms that night: they amounted to forty-six: each squire had his chamber and bath, in which he bathed. The ensuing day, the duke of Lancaster, after mass, created them knights, and presented them with long green coats, with straight sleeves lined with minever, after the manner of prelates. These knights had on their left shoulders a double cord of white silk, with white tufts hanging down.

The duke of Lancaster left the Tower this Sunday after dinner, on his return to Westminster: he was bare headed, and had round his neck the order of the king of France. The prince of Wales, six dukes, six earls, eighteen barons, accompanied him; and there were, of knights and other nobility, from eight to nine hundred horse in the procession. The duke was dressed in a jacket, after the German fashion, of cloth of gold, mounted on a white courser, with a blue garter on his left leg. He passed through the streets of London, which

which were all handsomely decorated with tapestries and other rich hangings: there were nine fountains in Cheapside, and other streets he passed through, which perpetually ran with white and red wines. He was escorted by prodigious numbers of gentlemen, with their servants in liveries and badges; and the different companies of London were led by their wardens clothed in their proper livery, and with ensigns of their trade. The whole cavalcade amounted to six thousand horse, which escorted the duke from the Tower to Westminster.

That same night the duke bathed, and on the morrow confessed himself, as he had good need to do, and according to his custom heard three masses. The prelates and clergy who had been assembled then came in a large body in procession from Westminster-abbey, to conduct the king thither, and returned in the same manner, the king and his lords following them. The dukes, earls, and barons, wore long scarlet robes, with mantles trimmed with ermine, and large hoods of the same. The dukes and earls had three bars of ermine on the left arm, a quarter of a yard long, or thereabout: the barons had but two. All the knights and squires had uniform cloaks of scarlet lined with minever. In the procession to the church, the duke had borne over his head a rich canopy of blue silk, supported on silver staves, with four golden bells that rang at the corners, by four burghesses of Dover, who claimed it as their right. On each side of him were the sword of

Mersey and the sword of Justice: the first was borne by the prince of Wales, and the other by the earl of Northumberland, constable of England, for the earl of Rutland had been dismissed. The earl of Westmoreland, marshal of England, carried the sceptre.

The procession entered the church about nine o'clock; in the middle of which was erected a scaffold covered with crimson cloth, and in the centre a royal throne of cloth of gold. When the duke entered the church, he seated himself on the throne, and was thus in regal state, except having the crown on his head. The archbishop of Canterbury proclaimed from the four corners of the scaffold, how God had given them a man for their lord and sovereign, and then asked the people if they were consenting to his being consecrated and crowned king. They unanimously shouted out, 'Aye!' and held up their hands, promising fealty and homage.

After this, the duke descended from his throne, and advanced to the altar to be consecrated. This ceremony was performed by two archbishops and ten bishops: he was stripped of all his royal state before the altar, naked to his shirt, and was then anointed and consecrated at six places; that is to say, on the head, the breast, the two shoulders, before and behind, on the back and hands: they then placed a bonnet on his head; and, while this was doing, the clergy chaunted the litany, or the service that is performed to hallow a font.

The king was now dressed in a churchman's clothes

clothes like a deacon; and they put on him shoes of crimson velvet, after the manner of a prelate. Then they added spurs with a point, but no rowel, and the sword of Justice was drawn, blessed and delivered to the king, who put it into the scabbard, when the archbishop of Canterbury girded it about him. The crown of Saint Edward, which is arched over like a cross, was next brought and blessed, and placed by the archbishop on the king's head. When mass was over, the king left the church, and returned to the palace in the same state as before. There was in the court-yard a fountain that constantly ran with white and red wine from various mouths. The king went first to his closet, and then returned to the hall to dinner.

At the first table sat the king, at the second the five great peers of England, at the third the principal citizens of London, at the fourth the new created knights, at the fifth all knights and squires of honour. The king was served by the prince of Wales, who carried the sword of Mercy, and on the opposite side, by the constable, who bore the sword of Justice. At the bottom of the table was the earl of Westmoreland with the sceptre. There were only at the king's table the two archbishops and seventeen bishops.

When dinner was half over, a knight of the name of Dymock entered the hall completely armed, and mounted on a handsome steed, richly

barded<sup>2</sup> with crimson housings. The knight was armed for wager of battle, and was preceded by another knight bearing his lance : he himself had his drawn sword in one hand, and his naked dagger by his side. The knight presented the king with a written paper, the contents of which were, that if any knight or gentleman should dare to maintain that king Henry was not a lawful sovereign, he was ready to offer him combat in the presence of the king, when and where he should be pleased to appoint. The king ordered this challenge to be proclaimed by heralds in six different parts of the town and the hall, to which no answer was made.

After king Henry had dined, and partaken of wine and spices in the hall, he retired to his private apartments, and all the company went to their homes. Thus passed the coronation day of king Henry, who remained that and the ensuing day at the palace of Westminster. The earl of Salisbury could not attend these feasts, for he was in close confinement under secure guards ; and the king's ministers, with many of the nobles and citizens of London, were anxious that he should be publicly beheaded in Cheapside. They said that he was deserving of every punishment, for having carried such a message from Richard of Bourdeaux to the French king and his court, and publicly proclaiming king Henry a false and wicked traitor, and that these were unpardonable crimes.

The king was naturally good tempered, and, far from inclining to put him to death, took compassion on him, and listened to the excuses he made for what he had done, by throwing the blame on the four knights who had been beheaded, as he had only obeyed their orders. The council and Londoners would not hear his excuses, and would have him executed, for they said he had deserved it. The earl of Salisbury therefore continued in prison, in great danger of his life.

Sir John Holland, earl of Huntingdon, who was governor of Calais, had been duly informed of all that had passed; how his brother, king Richard, had been arrested and carried to the Tower of London, where he had been condemned to pass his life, after resigning his crown to Henry of Lancaster, who was acknowledged king of England. The earl of Huntingdon, notwithstanding the vexation the state of his brother, king Richard, gave him, weighed well the times and circumstances, and found that he alone could not pretend to withstand the whole power of England. His countess, sister-german to king Henry, told him, on his return from Calais to England,—  
 ‘My lord, you must prudently lay aside your anger, and not hastily do any thing you may repent of, for my lord the king, my brother, can shew you much kindness. You see the whole kingdom is in his favour, and should you commit yourself by any rash act, you are ruined. I advise and entreat you to dissemble your vexation, for king



Henry is as much your brother as king Richard. Attach yourself to him, and you will find him a good and faithful friend; for there has not been any king of England so rich as he is, and he may be of the greatest service to you and to your children.'

The earl of Huntingdon listened to what the countess said, and followed her advice. He waited on his brother-in-law, king Henry, paid him many respects, and did his homage, promising fealty and service: the king received him with much pleasure. The earl, afterwards, with the support of other friends, pressed the king so strongly in favour of the earl of Salisbury, that his excuses were heard and accepted: his mission to France was pardoned, and he regained the favour of the king and people.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

INTELLIGENCE OF THE IMPRISONMENT OF KING RICHARD IS CARRIED TO FRANCE BY THE LADY OF COUCY.—KING CHARLES IS MUCH DISPLEASED THEREAT.—THE DUKE OF BOURBON ATTEMPTS IN VAIN TO REDUCE BOURDEAUX, AND OTHER TOWNS IN AQUITAINE, TO THE CROWN OF FRANCE.

**T**HE lady of Coucy, on landing at Boulogne, hastened her affairs, that she might begin her journey to Paris; for there were already great murmurings in many parts of France at the events which were happening in England. Some imperfect intelligence had been carried of them thither by merchants of Bruges, but when the lady of Coucy, who had been attached to queen Isabella, returned, the whole truth was known.

This lady, on her coming to Paris, went, as was natural, to the hôtel of her lord, who had arrived the preceding night. News of it was instantly carried to the king of France, who sent directly for the lord de Coucy to come and bring him intelligence of king Richard and his queen Isabella. On his entering the king's chamber, he asked him the state of England. The knight, not daring to conceal any thing, told him the full particulars he had learnt from his wife. The king

was much affected at the melancholy account he heard, for he knew the English to be determined, and hard to appease; and, although he had been for a considerable time in a good state of health, the rage he got into, on learning the events passing in England, brought back his frenzy, to the grief of his brother, uncles, and the barons of France, but they could not prevent it.

The duke of Burgundy said,—‘The marriage of king Richard with Isabella was ill advised: I spoke of it when in agitation, but was not attended to. The Londoners never sincerely liked king Richard, and all this misery has been hatched by the duke of Gloucester. We must learn how the English mean to proceed, and take our measures accordingly. Since they have imprisoned their king, they will put him to death (for they never loved him, because he preferred peace to war), and crown the duke of Lancaster. He will be forced to enter into such engagements from his obligations to them, that whether he will or not, he must act as they shall please.’

The duke of Burgundy added, ‘that it would be proper to know the inclinations of the inhabitants of Bourdeaux; for king Richard, having been born there, was greatly beloved by them, as well as by those of Dax, Bayonne, and that whole country. It would not be amiss (he said) that the constable, lord Louis de Sancerre, should have notice of what was proposed, and that he should advance toward the frontiers of Aquitaine, taking  
with

with him sir Reginald d'Espagne, Barrois des Barres, and other barons and prelates, who knew how to negotiate; that his brother of Berry should go into Poitou, and hover over the borders of Saintes, Blaye and Mirabel, in order that, if those of Bourdeaux should be inclined to enter into any treaty, they might be received; for we must gain them now, or never.'

These propositions of the duke of Burgundy were heard attentively, and his advice followed. He understood the matter well, and what ensued proved it. The inhabitants of Bourdeaux, Dax and Bayonne were lost in astonishment when they heard that their lord, king Richard, had been arrested, and was confined in the Tower of London, his principal counsellors executed, and duke Henry of Lancaster crowned king, and would not at first believe that such melancholy events had happened in England: but, as the reports were confirmed daily by fresh intelligence, they were constrained to think them true. The gates of the three cities were closed, and no person whatever suffered to go out, from the sorrow they were in, more particularly those of Bourdeaux, for king Richard had been educated among them. They were sincerely attached to him, and he always received them kindly when they waited on him, inclining naturally to comply with every request they made him. On first hearing of his misfortune, they said,—'Ah, Richard, gentle king! by God, you are the most honourable man in your realm. This mischief

has

has been brewed for you by the Londoners, who never loved you, and their dislike was still increased by your alliance with France. This misfortune is too great for us to bear. Ah, king Richard! they have acknowledged you their sovereign two and twenty years, and now they imprison you, and will put you to death; for, since they have crowned the duke of Lancaster king, that consequence must follow.'

Such were the lamentations of the townsmen of Bourdeaux, and that whole country; and they continued so long the sénéchal of Bourdeaux, a valiant and able English knight, determined to send home intelligence of these complaints in Bourdeaux, Dax and Bayonne, and that they were on the point of surrendering themselves to the king of France. Having written and sealed his letters, he gave them to a trusty varlet, whom he embarked on board a vessel; and, having a favourable wind, he was landed in Cornwall, and thence pursued his journey to London, where king Henry at that time was holding his parliament. These letters were addressed generally to the king and citizens of London, and, being opened and read, the king and his parliament consulted on them. The Londoners said, like men no way dismayed,—'Those of Bourdeaux and Bayonne will never turn to the French: they cannot bear them nor suffer their tricks. They are free under us; but, if the French govern them, they will be taxed and taxed over again two or three times a-year. This they have not been accustomed to, and will find it hard to endure.'

endure. These three cities are beside surrounded by the lands of great barons, who are and always have been loyal to England, such as the lords de Pommiers, de Mucident, de Duras, de Landuras, de Copane, de Rosem, de Langurant, and many other barons and knights, who will instantly make war upon them: they cannot issue out of their gates without being made prisoners. Notwithstanding, therefore, what the sénéchal of Bourdeaux writes to us, we do not fear they will ever turn to the French: let us, however, send them some man of valour and prudence, whom they esteem, and who has governed them before: and we recommend sir Thomas Percy.'

What they had advised was done, and sir Thomas Percy was entreated by the king and citizens to undertake the voyage and the government of that country. Sir Thomas could not refuse, and made his preparations.

It was now about Christmas, when the winds are high, and the sea rough: he made, therefore, his purveyances in Cornwall, at the port nearest to Bourdeaux, and his equipment was two hundred men at arms and four hundred archers.

Sir Thomas was accompanied by his nephew, Hugh de Hastings, Thomas Colleville, William Lisle, John de Grailly, bastard-son to the captain de Buch, William Drayton, John d'Ambrescourt, and several others. He had likewise with him Robert bishop of London \*, and master Richard

---

\* Robert Braybrook, dean of Sarum and lord chancellor.

**Rowhall.** It was, however, the middle of March before they were able to embark.

Before these lords arrived at Bourdeaux, the duke of Bourbon came to the city of Agen, to treat with those of Aquitaine, and made such progress that the magistrates of Bourdeaux, Dax and Bayonne, were deputed to Agen. The duke received them most kindly, and was not sparing of fine words and fair promises : he gave them to understand, that if they would turn to the French, and submit themselves to the obedience of the king of France, they should have granted whatever they might ask, and that the engagements they entered into should be sealed and recorded to last for ever; that whenever they might call on France, they should be supported to the utmost of its power. He made them many other flattering promises; but they replied, they must return to their constituents, and lay before them his offers, and consider how to act. They then left Agen and the duke of Bourbon, on their return home, where, on their arrival, they related all the duke had said; but his offers came to nothing, for the inhabitants of these towns having considered their present situation, and that France was vexed by all sorts of taxes, and every oppressive means to extort money, concluded they should suffer similar vexations if they submitted themselves to the French: ' It will be, therefore, better for us,' they said, ' to remain steady to the English, who hold us frank and free. If the Londoners have  
deposed



deposed king Richard, and crowned king Henry, what is that to us? We have still a king; and we understand the bishop of London and sir Thomas Percy are on their way hither, who will fully inform us of the truth. We have more commerce with the English than the French, in wool, wines and cloth, and they are naturally more inclined to us. Let us, therefore, be cautious how we enter into any treaties of which we may hereafter repent.'

Thus were the negotiations of Bourdeaux, Dax and Bayonne, with the French, broken off. Sir Thomas Percy and the bishop of London arrived safe in the harbour of Bourdeaux with their charge of men at arms and archers, to the great joy of some, and grief of others, who were of the party of the king of France. These English lords lodged all together at the abbey of Saint Andrew, and, when they thought it was time, they remonstrated with the commonalty of Bourdeaux on the state of England, and the cause of their coming, with such success as they were contented with: Dax and Bayonne were also satisfied. These cities and their dependancies remained steady to the English interest, and hard would it have been to have turned them to the French.

## CHAP. XXIX.

THE COUNCIL OF FRANCE, BY PERMISSION OF  
KING HENRY, SEND OVER PERSONS TO VISIT  
ISABELLA, QUEEN TO RICHARD II.

THE council of France, perceiving the king so greatly affected at what had befallen his son-in-law king Richard, determined to send to England some lord of high rank to see and inquire into the situation of queen Isabella. The lord Charles d'Albreth and Charles de Hangers were nominated on this embassy, and made their preparations accordingly. On leaving Paris, they rode to Boulogne, where they remained and sent a herald to inform king Henry of their intention of coming to England; for, although there was a truce between the two kingdoms, they would not venture thither without his assurance of safety.

King Henry, who had not forgotten the kindness of the king of France when in exile, mentioned the matter to his council; and the herald was told, that it was very agreeable to the king and council that his lords and their company should come to England, and by the direct road to London, not quitting it without licence. The French herald returned to tell his lords at Boulogne what he had obtained. They were pleased with the answer, since they could not obtain more.

They

They immediately embarked themselves and horses in two vessels, and, putting to sea, arrived at Dover. On disembarking and entering the town, they were met by one of the king's knights, who had been ordered thither to receive them. Having known him, when he accompanied the king in his banishment to Paris, they were all soon well acquainted. The lord Charles d'Albroth and the lord de Hangers were handsomely lodged in Dover, where they staid until their horses were landed. They continued their journey through Canterbury to Eltham, and wherever they stopped all their expenses were paid by the king. The king and his council were at Eltham, and they were splendidly entertained in compliment to the king of France, to whom king Henry felt himself under obligations.

The lord d'Albreth explained to the king the cause of his coming, who replied, 'You will go to London, and within four days I will consult my council, and you shall have an answer to your demands.' This satisfied them. They dined with the king, and, when it was over, recounted their horses and rode to London, attended by the knight, who lodged them conveniently in London, and never quitted them.

The king of England came, as he had said, to his palace of Westminster, and the French lords were told of it, and to hold themselves in readiness to attend him, for they would be summoned. The king, having his council with him, and being prepared what answer to make, the French lords were

were introduced. They said, they had been sent by the king and queen of France to see the young queen of England their daughter. The king answered,—‘Gentlemen, we no way wish to prevent you seeing her; but you must promise, on your oaths, that neither yourselves, nor any of your company speak to her on what has lately passed in England, nor about Richard of Bourdeaux. Should you do otherwise, you will greatly offend us and the country, and put yourselves in peril of your lives.’

The two knights replied, they would not infringe this regulation: all they wanted was to see and converse with her, and then they would set out on their return. Not long after this, the earl of Northumberland carried them to Havering at the Bower, where the young queen resided. She was attended by the duchess of Ireland, daughter to the lord de Coucy, the duchess of Gloucester, her two daughters, and other ladies and damsels, as companions. The earl introduced the two knights to the queen, who conversed some time with them, asking questions after her parents, the king and queen of France. They kept the promise they had made, by never mentioning the name of king Richard; and, when they had been with her a sufficient time, took leave and returned to London. They made no long stay there, but, having packed up their things, and had their expenses paid by the king’s officers, they rode to Eltham, and dined with the king, who presented them with some rich jewels. On taking leave,  
the

the king parted with them amicably, and said,—  
 ‘ Tell those who have sent you, that the queen  
 shall never suffer the smallest harm, or any disturbance,  
 but keep up a state and dignity becoming  
 her birth and rank, and enjoy all her rights ;  
 for, young as she is, she ought not as yet  
 to be made acquainted with the changes in this  
 world.’

The knights were very happy to hear the king  
 speak thus, and then departed. They lay that  
 night at Dartford, on the morrow at Ospringe,  
 the next at Canterbury, and then at Dover, the  
 king’s officers paying every expense of their  
 journey. Having embarked with a favourable  
 wind, they were landed at Boulogne, and thence  
 proceeded to the king and queen at Paris, to whom  
 they related what you have read.

We will now leave them, and speak of the affairs  
 of England.

## CHAP. XXX.

THE EARLS OF HUNTINGDON AND SALISBURY, AND SOME OTHERS, HAVING FAILED TO MURDER TREACHEROUSLY KING HENRY OF LANCASTER, RISE IN ARMS AGAINST HIM.—THEY ARE DEFEATED AND BEHEADED, AND THEIR HEADS SENT TO THE KING.

**I**T was much disputed among the nobles, and in the principal towns, whether Richard of Bourdeaux was put to death, and nothing more was said about him, which was but what he deserved. King Henry declared, that in regard to the charges made against him he much pitied him, and would never consent to his death ; that the prison wherein he was confined was sufficient punishment ; and that he had engaged his word no other harm should be done him, which promise he was resolved to keep.

The enemies of king Richard replied,—‘ Sire, we see plainly that compassion alone moves you thus to say and act, but, in so doing, you are running great risks ; for, so long as he shall be alive, notwithstanding the outward good humour and sincerity with which he resigned to you his crown, and that in general you have been acknowledged as king, and received the homage of all, there must remain many attached to him, who still preserve their affection, and will instantly rise against you



you whenever they perceive any hopes of delivering him from prison. The king of France also, whose daughter he married, is so exasperated at the late events, that he would willingly retaliate the first opportunity ; and his power is great of itself, and must be increased by his connections in England.'

King Henry answered,—' Until I shall observe any thing contrary to the present state of affairs, or that the king of France or other persons act against me, I will not change my resolution, but firmly keep the promise I have made.' This was the answer of king Henry, for which he narrowly escaped suffering, as you shall presently hear.

The earl of Huntingdon, brother to king Richard, though married to the sister of king Henry, could not forget his treatment of the late king, any more than the earl of Salisbury. They had a secret meeting near to Oxford, on the means to deliver Richard of Bourdeaux from the Tower of London, destroy king Henry, and throw the country into confusion. They resolved to proclaim a tournament to be holden at Oxford, of twenty knights and squires, and invite the king to witness it privately. During the time the king was sitting at dinner they were to slay him, (for they were to be provided with a sufficiency of men at arms for their purpose) and to dress out in the royal robes a priest called Magdalen, who had been of king Richard's chapel, and was like him in countenance, and make the people to understand that he was delivered from prison, and had resumed



his state. They were, instantly after the business was completed, to send information of it to the king of France, that he might send them large succours, under the command of the count de Saint Pol or any others.

They executed this plan, and proclaimed a grand tournament to be holden by twenty knights and as many squires at Oxford, who were to be accompanied by many ladies and damsels. They had gained to their party the young earl of Kent, nephew to the earl of Huntingdon, and the lord de Spencer, one of the most powerful barons in England. They expected the aid of the earl of Rutland, because king Henry had deprived him of the constableship, but he failed them, and some say that by him their plot was discovered.

When all things had been settled for this feast, the earl of Huntingdon came to Windsor, where the king held his state, and with much flattering, like one who, by soft words, thought to deceive, invited, with many marks of affection, the king to be present at it. Not supposing any treason was intended, he readily complied, and the earl of Huntingdon, much rejoiced, thanked and left the king. On going away, he said to the canon de Roberfac \*, ‘ Get thyself ready for our feast, and I promise thee if thou come, and we meet in the lists, there shall be a sharp conflict between us.’ Sir John de Roberfac replied, ‘ By my faith, my lord, if the king come to your feast, it is necessary

---

\* In the MSS. he is called Robeffart and Robertfart.

that I accompany him.' Upon this, the earl shook him by the hand, and said, 'Many thanks,' and passed on.

Several knights and squires, hearing of this tournament, made preparations to attend it, and all the armourers in London were fully employed. The king's ministers were attentive to every circumstance that was agitated, and they told him, 'Sire, you have no business to go to this tournament, and must not think of it, for we have heard whispers of plots that are very displeasing to us, and in a few days we shall learn the whole.' The king believed what they had said, and did not go to the tournament, nor any of his knights, and indeed very few of those who were marked for death.

When the earls of Salisbury, Huntingdon, Kent, and the lord de Spencer, found they had failed in their scheme of seizing the king, they held a council, and said,—'We must go to Windsor and raise the country. We will dress Magdalen in royal robes, and make him ride with us, proclaiming that king Richard has escaped from prison. All who see him will believe it true, and the report will gain such credit that we shall destroy our enemies. This they executed, by collecting their whole party, amounting in all to about five hundred men, and, placing Magdalen in the center, dressed in royal state, they rode towards Windsor, where king Henry kept his court.

God was very kind to the king, for he had early intelligence that the earls of Huntingdon,

Salisbury, the young earl of Kent, and the lord de Spencer, were advancing towards Windsor, to seize and murder him; that they were in sufficient force to take the castle, and had with them Magdalen, one of the priests of the chapel royal to Richard of Bourdeaux, dressed up as the late king; and that they gave it out every where that king Richard had escaped from prison. Many of the country people believed it, saying, 'We have seen him,' mistaking him for the king.

Those who brought the intelligence said to king Henry, 'Sire, depart hence instantly, and ride to London, for they will be here in a short time.' He followed this counsel, and, mounting his horse, set off with his attendants from Windsor, taking the road to London. He had not been long departed, before those who intended to put him to death came to Windsor, and entered the castle-gate, for there were none to oppose them. They searched the apartments of the castle, and the houses of the canons, in hopes of finding the king, but were disappointed. On their failure, they were much enraged, and rode away to Colnbrook, where they lay, and forced many to join them by fair or foul means, saying that king Richard was in their company, which some believed, but others not.

King Henry, doubtful of the consequences of this conspiracy, hastened to London, and, by a roundabout road, entered the Tower. Some sharp words passed between him and Richard of Bourdeaux; he told him,—'I saved your life, and at difficulty in doing it; and, in return,

you want to have me murdered by your brother, and my brother-in-law, and by the earls of Salisbury and Kent, your nephew, with the lord de Spencer, but, if you have had any hand in this plot, it shall end badly for you.' Richard denied any knowledge of it, saying,—'As God may help me, and have compassion on my soul, I never before heard one word of this plot. I never looked for any change in my situation, for I am perfectly contented with my present state.' Nothing more passed. The king sent for the mayor of London and his particular friends, to whom he related every thing he knew or had heard of this conspiracy. They were greatly surprised on hearing it, and said,—Sire, you must summon your forces, and march instantly against them, before they increase more in numbers. We have made you king, and king you shall be, in spite of all that envy and discontent may do against you.'

The king lost no time in employing clerks and messengers to write and carry letters to the knights of his realm. He wrote himself to his constable, the earl of Northumberland, to his marshal, the earl of Westmoreland, and to other great barons in Essex and Lincoln, from whom he expected assistance. All who received them made haste to join the king.

The earls of Huntingdon and Salisbury, and their party, determined to march to London, for they imagined there must be some of the citizens attached to king Richard, who would give them support. In consequence, they left Colnbrook,

and advanced to Brentford, seven miles from London, where they lay. Not one of the Londoners joined them, but shut themselves up in their town. When they saw this, they marched away towards Saint Albans, a large town, and there staid one day. On the morrow, they went to Berk-hempstead. They continued marching through different parts, publishing every where that Magdalen was king Richard, and came to a strong town called Soncestre\*, which had a bailiff attached to king Henry for the guard of the town and defence of the adjacent parts. The three earls and lord de Spencer took up their lodgings in Cirencester, and were that night left quiet, for the bailiff, being a valiant and prudent man, did not think he was strong enough to combat them, and dissembled his thoughts as well as he could.

The next morning the earl of Salisbury and lord de Spencer left the earl of Huntingdon and his nephew, saying they would advance farther into the country to gain friends, and would visit the lord of Berkeley. They rode down Severn side, but were badly advised thus to separate, for both parties were weakened by it. The earl of Huntingdon remained in Cirencester, and attempted to tamper with the bailiff and townsmen. He told them that the Londoners had delivered king Richard out of prison, and within two days he would be there. The bailiff, having collected a large force, said that not one word was true; for that he had just heard the contrary from king Henry and the citizens of London

---

\* Soncestre,—Cirencester, pronounced Cicester.



to assure him of the truth, and that he should act conformably to the orders he had received. The earl of Huntingdon, hearing this, changed colour from disappointment. Finding he could not gain his end, he returned to his lodgings, armed himself, and made his men do the same, determining to conquer these ale-drinkers by force, and set fire to their town as an example, and to terrify the country.

The bailiff was not idle in collecting all the men he could: they amounted, archers and all, to two thousand men, which he draw up in the market-place, when the force of the earls of Huntingdon and Kent were not three hundred. Notwithstanding this inequality, they made ready to begin the battle, and the archers attacked each other, so that several were wounded. The bailiff and his men, who were very numerous, charged the rebels vigorously, without sparing any one, for he had the king's special orders to take the leaders, dead or alive. The earl's party were forced to retire within their lodgings; and the house wherein the two earls were, the bailiff's men surrounded and conquered.

Many were killed, and more wounded. The earl of Huntingdon defended himself gallantly, like a valiant man at arms as he was; but the numbers against him were too great to withstand; and he was slain fighting, as was the young earl of Kent, who was much lamented by several knights in England and other countries. He was young and handsome, and had very unwillingly taken part in this conspiracy; but his uncle and the earl of Salisbury had forced him into it.

The

The men of Cirencester, who were wroth against them, cut off their heads, and sent them in two panniers, as fish is carried, by a varlet on horseback, to rejoice the king and the Londoners. A similar fate befel the earl of Salisbury and lord de Spencer: they were made prisoners by the knights and squires the king had sent against them, who had them beheaded, and sent their heads to London. Great numbers of their partisans, and knights and squires who had accompanied them, were executed, after which the country remained in peace.

The king of France, his brother, uncles and council, learning that during Easter of the year 1400, the English had sent men at arms and archers to Calais, Guisnes, and the neighbouring castles, and were providing these places with many stores, issued a summons for all knights and squires to prepare themselves to march whithersoever they might be ordered, and specially provided for the frontier of Boulogne and the sea-shore.



## CHAP. XXXI.

ON THE DEATH OF JOHN OF MONTFORT, DUKE OF BRITTANY, THE BRETONS UNDERTAKE THE WARSHIP OF THE YOUNG DUKE, AND TO BE FRIENDLY TO FRANCE.—THE FRENCH KING, DISTRUSTING THE SENTIMENTS OF THE NEW REIGN IN ENGLAND, MAKES PROVISION AGAINST ANY SUDDEN CHANGE.

AT this period, John duke of Brittany departed this life, leaving issue two sons and a daughter. The eldest son had been betrothed to the second daughter of the king of France: he could not have the eldest, as she was married to the king of England, as has been related. She had indeed been promised him, and treaties entered into on the subject at Tours in Touraine; but the king was advised to break it off, to marry her more nobly and richly in England. Many of the French lords, however, said, that it would never turn out well thus to break through solemn engagements.

On the death of the duke of Brittany, it was determined in the council, that the duke of Orleans should advance to the borders of Brittany with a body of men at arms, to confer with the nobles and chiefs of the principal towns of the duchy, to learn their intentions respecting the young

young duke, and to demand he should be delivered up to him to carry to the court of France.

The duke of Orleans, in consequence of this resolution, summoned a considerable number of men at arms, and marched them to Pontorson, where he halted, and signified his arrival to the barons of Brittany. The prelates, nobles, and chief magistrates of the great towns, assembled at Pontorson, when the duke of Orleans made them the above request.

They were prepared with an answer, and replied they would be guardians to their young duke [and educate him in their own country until he should be of a proper age; that then they would bring him to France, that he might do his homage to the king, as was his duty; that, for the due performance of this, they were willing to enter into bonds, subjecting themselves to the loss of their lands should they break the engagement.]

The duke of Orleans, finding that he could not gain more, took an obligation from the principal barons, who had their duke in ward, to deliver him up to the king of France when he should be of a proper age.

These obligations being written and sealed, the duke of Orleans had them in charge, and, taking leave of the barons, departed from Pontorson, on his return to Paris, and related to the king, his brother, all that had passed.

It was known in England, that the French, by their king's command, had strongly reinforced, and re-victualled all the towns, castles and forts in  
Picardy,

Picardy, and on the borders of the Boulonois, and had closed the river Somme, so that no merchandise nor corn could come to England, nor pass Abbeville. The merchants of the two countries who were used freely to visit each, were now afraid of doing so; and those on the borders of Calais and Guisnes were ruined, although there were not any hostilities commenced, for orders to that effect had not been given.

The king of England was advised by his council to be on his guard; for the French, they said, were making great preparations of ships at Harfleur, and plainly shewed they were inclined for war. The count de Saint Pol and the lord Charles d'Albreth were appointed commanders, and it was to be supposed, that if the earls of Huntingdon and Salisbury were alive, they would have crossed the sea, for they had many connections in England. They added, 'Sire, so long as Richard of Bourdeaux lives, the country will never have peace.'

'I believe what you say may be true,' replied the king; 'but, with regard to me, I will never put him to death. I have given him my word, that no bodily harm shall befall him; and I will keep my promise, until it shall appear that he enters into any plots against me.' 'Sire,' answered the knights, 'his death would be more to your advantage than his life; for, so long as the French know he is alive, they will exert themselves to make war against you, in the hope of re-placing

re-placing him on the throne, on account of his having married the daughter of their king.'

The king of England made no reply, but, leaving them in conversation, went to his falconers, and, placing a falcon on his wrist, forgot all in feeding him.

---

## CHAP. XXXII.

THE DEATH OF KING RICHARD.—THE TRUCES ARE RENEWED AND KEPT BETWEEN FRANCE AND ENGLAND.—THE EARL MARSHAL, WHO HAD BEEN BANISHED ENGLAND, DIES AT VENICE.

**I**T was not long after this that a true report was current in London of the death of Richard of Bourdeaux. I could not learn the particulars of it, nor how it happened, the day I wrote these chronicles. Richard of Bourdeaux, when dead, was placed on a litter covered with black, and a canopy of the same. Four black horses were harnessed to it, and two varlets in mourning conducted the litter, followed by four knights dressed also in mourning. Thus they left the Tower of London, where he had died, and paraded the streets at a foot's pace until they came to Cheap-side, which is the greatest thoroughfare in the city, and there they halted for upwards of two hours. More than twenty thousand persons, of both sexes,

sexes, came to see the king, who lay in the litter, his head on a black cushion, and his face uncovered.

Some pitied him, when they saw him in this state, but others did not, saying he had for a long time deserved death. Now consider, ye kings, lords, dukes, prelates, and earls, how very changeable the fortunes of this world are. This king Richard reigned twenty-two years in great prosperity, and with much splendour; for there never was a king of England who expended such sums, by more than one hundred thousand florins, as king Richard did in keeping up his state, and his household establishments. I, John Froissart, canon and treasurer of Chimay, know it well, for I witnessed and examined it, during my residence with him, for a quarter of a year. He made me good cheer, because in my youth I had been secretary to king Edward his grandfather, and the lady Philippa of Hainault, queen of England. When I took my leave of him at Windsor, he presented me, by one of his knights called sir John Golofre, a silver gilt goblet, weighing full two marcs, filled with one hundred nobles, which were then of service to me, and will be so as long as I live. I am bound to pray to God for him, and sorry am I to write of his death; but, as I have dictated and augmented this history to the utmost of my power, it became necessary to mention it, that what became of him might be known.

I saw

I saw two strange things in my time, though widely different. I was sitting at dinner in the city of Bourdeaux when king Richard was born : it was on a Wednesday, on the point of ten o'clock. At that hour sir Richard de Pontchardon, then marshal of Aquitaine, came to me and said,— ‘ Froissart, write, that it may be remembered, my lady, the princess, is brought to bed of a fine son : he is born on twelfth day, the son of a king's son, and shall be king himself.’ The gallant knight foretold the truth, for he was king of England twenty-two years ; but he did not foresee what was to be the conclusion of his life. When king Richard was born, his father was in Galicia, which don Pedro had given him to conquer : a curious thing happened, on my first going to England, which I have much thought on since. I was in the service of queen Philippa, and, when she accompanied king Edward and the royal family, to take leave of the prince and princess of Wales, at Berk-hempstead, on their departure for Aquitaine, I heard an ancient knight, in conversation with some ladies, say,— ‘ We have a book called Brust, that declares neither the prince of Wales, dukes of Clarence, York, nor Gloucester, will be kings of England, but the descendants of the duke of Lancaster.’ Now I, the author of this history say, that, considering all things, these two knights, sir Richard de Pontchardon, and sir Bar the Comers de Brulls, in what they said, were both in the right, for all the world saw Richard reign



reign for twenty-two years in England, and the crown then fall to the house of Lancaster.

King Henry would never have been king, on the conditions you have heard, if his cousin, Richard, had treated him in the friendly manner he ought to have done. The Londoners took his part for the wrongs the king had done him and his children, whom they much compassionated.

When the funeral car of king Richard had remained in Cheapside two hours, it was conducted forward, in the same order as before, out of the town. The four knights then mounted their horses, which were waiting for them, and continued their journey with the body until they came to a village, where there is a royal mansion, called Langley, thirty miles from London. There king Richard was interred: God pardon his sins, and have mercy on his soul!

News was spread abroad that king Richard was dead. This had been expected some time; for it was well known he would never come out of the Tower alive. His death was concealed from his queen, as orders had been given for that purpose, which were prudently obeyed for a considerable time. All these transactions were perfectly well known in France; and such knights and squires as wished for war, looked every moment for orders to attack the frontiers. The councils, however, of both kingdoms, thought it would be for the advantage of the two countries that the truces should be renewed, and for this end different negotiators went to the neighbourhood of Calais.



The king of France was not in good health, nor ever had been since he heard of the misfortunes of his son-in-law, Richard; and his disorder was greatly increased when he was told of his death.

The duke of Burgundy took the chief government of the realm! he came to Saint Omer and Bourbourg, where were the duke of Bourbon, the lord Charles d'Albreth, sir Charles de Hangiers, sir John de Châteaumorant, and such prelates as the patriarch of Jerusalem, the bishops of Paris and Beauvais. On the part of England were the earls of Northumberland, Rutland and Devonshire; sir Henry Percy, son to the earl of Northumberland, sir Evan Fitzwarren, and the bishops of Winchester and Ely.

The French proposed having the queen of England delivered to them, but the English would not listen to it, saying they would gladly have her reside in England on her dower, and that, if she had lost her husband, they would provide her another, who should be young and handsome, and whom she would love. Richard of Bourdeaux was too old for her, and the person they should offer was suitable in every respect, being no other than the prince of Wales, eldest son to king Henry.

The French would not agree to this, for they dared not come to any final conclusion in this matter without the consent of the king her father. He was now in a very bad state, and much weakened in his constitution, for there had not been

been found any physician who could conquer his disorder. The treaty was therefore laid aside, and the subject of the truce canvassed. It was so well conducted, that it was resolved to continue it to the original term of thirty years, four of which were already gone, and it was now to last for twenty-six years. This was put into writing, and signed and sealed by those who had full powers so to do from the two kings.

When this was done, they separated, and each party returned home.

I have not mentioned what became of the earl marshal, by whom all these late misfortunes originated, but I will now tell you. He was residing in Venice when he first heard that Henry of Lancaster was king of England, and king Richard dead, and took this news so grievously to heart that he fell sick, was put to bed, became frantic and died.

Such were the misfortunes that befel the greatest lords in England.

## CHAP. XXXIII.

FRANCE PRESERVES A NEUTRALITY BETWEEN  
THE POPES OF ROME AND AVIGNON.—THE  
ELECTION OF THE EMPEROR ROBERT.

**I**N the year of grace 1399, pope Benedict, whom the French had formerly supported, was deposed, as well likewise the emperor of Germany for his wicked deeds. The electors of the empire, and all the great barons of Germany rose against him, and sent him to Bohemia, of which country he was king. They elected emperor in his stead a valiant and prudent man, called Robert, duke of Heidelberg, who came to Cologne, and was there crowned with the crown of Germany; for those of Aix would not admit him within their town, nor the duke of Gueldres submit himself to his obedience, which angered him much.

The new emperor promised to restore union to the church. In the mean time, the king of France negotiated with the Liege-men, who were determined for the Roman pope, and managed so well, through sir Baldwin de Mont-jardin (who governed in part the bishoprick of Liege, and was a knight of the king's chamber), that the whole country complied with the desire of the French king, and became neuter.

The Liege-men sent orders to those of their clergy who were at Rome, that if they did not  
return

return home by a fixed day, they should be deprived of their benefices. On hearing this, they all came back to Liege; and pope Boniface, who lost much by this order, sent a legate to Germany to preach to the Liege-men, and endeavour to make them return to their former creed. The legate dared not advance farther than Cologne, but sent his instructions and letters to Liege. They read them, and told the messenger,—‘Do not return hither again on the business thou art now come upon, unless thou shalt wish to be drowned; for as many messengers as shall be sent us, so many will we throw into the Meuse.’

THE END.



# INDEX.

---

\* \* The small numeral letters refer to the introductory matter, the large roman numerals denote the volumes, and the figures\* the pages.

## A.

*ABBVILLE*, the town of, taken by the French forces under sir Hugh de Châtillon, Vol. III. p. 397.

*Aberdeen*, the Bishop of, taken prisoner by the English at the battle of Nevil's Cross, II. 196.

*Achery sur Aine*, the town of, in Picardy, taken by the English under sir Eustace d'Ambreticourt, III. 15.

*Atchievement at arms*, between the lord de la Rochefoucault and sir William de Montferrant, at Bourdeaux, VIII. 140.

*Acquigny*, the castle of, taken by the lord de la Riviere, III. 167.

## INDEX.

*Aquitaine*, the country of, conquered from the English by the earl of Lisle, I. 219.—Given to the duke of Lancaster by Richard II. and his council, XI. 119.

*Aquitaine*, the towns of, send ambassadors to England to remonstrate against the gift made of the duchy to the duke of Lancaster, XI. 134.—Succeeded in the object of their remonstrance, 151.

*Additions* to the printed copies of Froissart's Chronicles, from MSS. in the Hafod Library, II. 249. IV. 233, *note*. V. 239, 362, *note*. 365, *note*. 375. X. 190, 320. XII. 42.

*Advertisement* to the first edition of the Chronicles, I. v.

————— to the second edition, I. vii.

*Africa*, the town of, besieged by the duke of Bourbon, X. 195.—The siege abandoned, 240.

*Agace*, Gobin, conducts the English army under king Edward III. to a ford on the Lomme at Blanchetaque, previous to the battle of Crecy, II. 152.

*Agen*, the town of, taken by the French army under the duke of Anjou, IV. 75.

*Aide*, the nature of the tax so called, explained, II. 376. *note*.

*Aiguillon*, the castle of, in Gascony, surrenders to the earl of Derby, II. 79.—Besieged by the  
the



## INDEX.

- the duke of Normandy, 115.—The siege abandoned by order of the king of France, 176.—Taken by the French, under the duke of Anjou, IV. 75.
- Aire*, the town of, in Artois, besieged by the Flemings in the interest of the king of England, II. 215.
- Albret*, fir Perducas d', takes offence at the conduct of the prince of Wales, III. 264.—Marries the lady Isabella of Bourbon, 341.—Complains to the king of France of a tax the prince of Wales was about to impose upon the lands of himself and other lords of Gascony, 343.—Returns to the interest of the prince of Wales, 434.—Receives the investiture of the lands of Chaumont, VI. 137.—His death, 138.
- Albret*, the lord Charles d', obtains permission from Charles VI. to quarter the fleurs de lis of France alternately with his own arms, X. 60.
- Alençon*, the earl of, slain at the battle of Crecy, II. 168.
- Alençon*, earl Peter d', returns to France from England, where he had been as one of the hostages for king John, III. 383.
- Alexandria*, the town of, in Lombardy, besieged by the count d'Armagnac, X. 267.—The siege raised, 276.

*Alyubarota,*

## INDEX.

- Aljubarrota*, the battle of, between the armies of Spain and Portugal, VII. 277, 404.
- Alois*, the castle of, in Auvergne, taken by Amerigot Marcel, V. 77.
- St. Amand*, the town of, taken by the earl of Hainault, I. 237.
- Ambreticourt*, sir Eustace d', hospitably receives queen Isabella of England, after she had fled from Paris, I. 19.—Taken prisoner at the battle of Poitiers, II. 320.—Rescued by his own men, 326.—Defeated and taken prisoner at the battle of Nogent sur Seine, 452.—Obtains his freedom and takes several towns in Champagne, 461.—Takes the town of Achery sur Aine, in Picardy, III. 15.—Commits great devastations in Picardy, &c. 32.—Made prisoner and ransomed in Limousin, IV. 116.—Dies at Carentan, in Normandy, 117.
- Ambreticourt*, sir John d', on his return from Galicia, goes to Paris, to accomplish a deed of arms, IX. 27.
- Amurat*, the Turkish commander, defeated by the Hungarians, VII. 346.—Invades Hungary a second time, X. 354.
- Anchin*, Peter d', takes the town of Ortingas, VII. 135.—Sells it for 8000 francs, 137.
- Andregben*, the castle of, belonging to the earl of Flanders, burnt and pillaged by the Whitehoods, under John Lyon, V. 119.
- Andregben*,

## INDEX.

*Andregben*, fir Arnold d', captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 322.—Advifes Henry, king of Caftille, not to hazard a battle with the prince of Wales, III. 295.—Captured at the battle of Navarete, 313.

*St. Andrews*, the bifhop of, taken prifoner at the battle of Nevil's Crofs, II. 196.

*Anghein*, the lord d', takes the town of Grammont, in Flanders, for the earl, VI. 3.—Slain before Ghent, 6.

*Angle*, fir Guifcard d', appointed marfhal of Guienne, III. 102.—Travels through France to Aquitaine in difguife, 394.—Created a knight of the garter, IV. 152.—Captured by the Spaniards before La Rochelle, 161.—Ranfomed, 253.—Appointed tutor to Richard the Second, IV. 283.—Dies in London, V. 179, 374.

*Angoulême*, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 93.—By the duke of Normandy, 114.—Surrenders a fecond time to the French, IV. 190.

*Anjou*, the duke of, fent to the affiftance of the Bretons in the intereft of the lord Charles of Blois, III. 119.—Summons his vaffals to make war on the prince of Wales in Aquitaine, 400.—Heads an army againft Guienne, IV. 73.—Breaks up his expedition, 92.—Leads an army into Upper Gascony, 249.—Takes the town of Lourde, 250.—Makes a truce with the duke of Lancafter

## INDEX.

Lancaster, 253.—Takes several places in Upper Gascony, 257.—Undertakes an expedition against the English in the Bourde-  
lois, 304.—Takes the town of Bergerac,  
307.—Takes several other places in Gas-  
cony, 321 et seq.—Returns to Toulouse,  
332.—Collects another army against the  
English in Gascony, 380.—Makes war on  
Brittany, V. 72.—Receives the territories  
of the queen of Naples as a gift from pope  
Clement, 91.—Seizes the jewels of his  
brother king Charles the Fifth, 224.—  
Seizes the government of France as regent  
during the minority of Charles the Sixth,  
225.—Makes preparations to march for  
Naples, VI. 19.—Sets out for Italy, 36.—  
Enters Naples, 40.—Dies at a castle near  
Naples, 367.—Takes Malvoisin, VII. 152\*.

---

\* It may not be improper to observe here, once for all, upon a circumstance which will doubtless excite the surprise of the reader, that in this instance, as well as several others in different parts of the Index, events are inserted subsequently to the account of the death of the agent. This has arisen unavoidably from the manner in which Froissart composed his history, and from new and additional information communicated to him many years after he had completed the former part of his work, and had mentioned the death of the person to whom such information related. But it was considered that it would have been a vain and fruitless attempt to rectify this imperfection; it has, therefore, been deemed advisable to leave things as they were found, and to insert the events selected for the Index in the order and rotation in which they appear noticed by the Author himself. R.

—Besieges

## INDEX.

—Besieges Lourde, but being unable to take the castle, he burns the town and retreats, 178.

*Anjou*, madame d', queen of Naples, advised, on the death of her husband, the duke of Anjou, to solicit the pope for possession of Provence, VI. 367.—Urges her claims to this country, VII. 1.—Makes her public entry into Paris in company with her son Lewis of Anjou, king of Sicily, &c. IX. 187.—Institutes a law-suit in the courts of Paris against sir Peter Craon, 191.—Obtains judgment against him, 223.

*Anjou*, Lewis of, son of the duke of Anjou, makes his public entry into Paris as king of Sicily, &c. IX. 187.—Sets out from Avignon to Arragon, X. 3.—Marries the daughter of the king of Arragon, 4.—Embarks with his young bride for Sicily, 5.

*Anne*, of Bohemia, sets out for England, VI. 30.—Married to Richard the Second, 33.—Her death, XI. 121.

*Annequin*, sir Baldwin d', captured by sir Bartholomew Burghersh, III. 13.

*Apologue*, delivered to the cardinals respecting the papacy, by friar John de la Rochetailade, VII. 353.

*Appearances*, wonderful, in the heavens, seen by the army of Philip von Artaveld on the eve of the battle of Rosebecque, VI. 210.

*Ardembourg*,

## INDEX.

*Ardenbourg*, the town of, taken by the men of Ghent, VI. 257.—Narrowly escapes being taken a second time by them, VII. 19.

*Ardres*, the town of, in Picardy, attacked ineffectually by the French forces, III. 425.—Surrenders to the duke of Burgundy, IV. 288.

*Arduick*, the castle of, in Picardy, taken by the duke of Burgundy, IV. 288.

*Armagnac*, the lord of, complains to the king of France of a tax the prince of Wales was about to impose upon the lands of himself and other lords of Gascony, III. 343.

*Armagnac*, the count d', obtains the remission of sixty thousand francs of his ransom of the count de Foix, at the intercession of the princess of Wales, VII. 128.—Endeavours to prevail on the free companies to sell their forts, IX. 41.—Is thwarted by the count de Foix, 45.—Leads an army into Lombardy against the duke of Milan, X. 260.—Applies to sir John Hawkwood for his assistance, 264.—Besieges Alexandria, 267.—His death, 275.

*Armagnac*, sir Bernard d', does homage to the king of France, X. 358.

*Arnaut*, sir Peter, appointed governor of Lourde, in Gascony, VII. 129.—Murdered by the count de Foix, 177.

*Aragon*, the king of, promises to assist king Henry of Castille against don Pedro, and the

## INDEX.

the prince of Wales, III. 245.—His death, VIII. 127.

*Arras*, a conference held there with the view of bringing about a peace between the kings of France and England, I. 250.

*Artaveld*, Jacob von, a citizen of Ghent, governs all Flanders, I. 116.—Sends ambassadors to Edward the Third, to invite him over, 126.—Joins the earl of Hainault with a large army before Thin l'Eveque, 203.—Attempts to disinherit the earl of Flanders, and to give the country to the king of England, II. 96.—Murdered at Ghent, 101.

*Artaveld*, Philip von, son of the above, appointed governor of Ghent, V. 322.—Leads the men of Ghent to attack the earl of Flanders at Bruges, VI. 89.—Defeats the earl, and takes Bruges, 98.—Returns to Ghent in great state, 114.—Besieges Oudenarde, 117.—Writes to the king of France to solicit his interference to make peace between the country of Flanders and the earl, 133.—His letters treated with contempt, 134.—Imprisons a messenger from the king of France, 147.—His answer to the letters he had brought him, 148.—Takes measures to guard the passes of the country against the army of the king of France, VI. 159.—After the defeat of Peter du Bois, collects a force to oppose the king  
of



## INDEX.

of France in person, 206.—Defeated and slain at the battle of Rosebecque, 225.

*Artois*, lord Charles d', captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 335.

*Artois*, lord John d', captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 335.

*Artois*, lord Philip d', marries the lady Mary of Berry, and is appointed constable of France, X. 87.—Taken prisoner at the battle of Nicopoli in Turkey, XI. 301.—Dies at Hautloge, in the same country, 374.

*Artois*, the lord Robert d', befriends Isabella, queen of Edward the Second, after she had been commanded to quit France, I. 18.—Is himself banished by king Philip, 93.—Takes refuge in England, and is created earl of Richmond, 97.—Sent into Brittany to aid the countess of Montford against the lord Charles of Blois, II. 20.—Engages the lord Lewis of Spain at sea, 23.—Lands in Brittany, 25.—Takes the town of Vannes, 28.—Is besieged in it, 30.—Killed, 31.

*Arundel*, the earl of, besieged with king Edward the Second in Bristol by the queen's forces, I. 27.—Condemned to death and beheaded, 29.

*Arundel*, Richard earl of, defeats the Flemish fleet under sir John le Bucq, VIII. 158.—Appointed to the command of a naval expedition, IX. 151.—Lands near la Rochelle,

## INDEX.

chelle, 196.—Defeats the Rochellers in a skirmish, 201.—Lands in Normandy, and over-runs the country, 332.—Returns to Southampton, 333.—Joins the duke of Gloucester in his attempts to excite disturbances in England, XI. 349.—Committed to the Tower, XII. 25.—Beheaded, 29.

*Arundel*, sir John, heads an armament against France, and lands at Cherbourg, V. 1.—Sent with a force to the assistance of the duke of Brittany, 150.—Perishes at sea, 151.

*Asai*, Guy d', steward, of Toulouse, endeavours to prevent the free companies from entering France, on their return from Spain, III. 251.—Is defeated by them before Montaubon, and made prisoner, 258.

*Assembly*, of the lords of England and France, held at Amiens, to treat of a peace between the two countries, X. 344.—Breaks up without having accomplished the object of its meeting, 355.

— held at Rheims by the king of France and the emperor of Germany, to consult on measures to put an end to the schism in the church, XII. 35.

*Assueton*, sir John, a Scots knight, performs a gallant deed of arms at Noyon, IV. 86.

*Athenis*, the town of, taken from the English by the duke of Normandy, II. 111.

## INDEX.

*Atheus*, the duke of, slain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 331.

*Atremen*, Francis, a citizen of Ghent, surprises the town of Oudenarde, VI. 319.—Defeats a party of the French at Ardembourg, 386.—Makes an unsuccessful attempt to take Ardembourg, VII. 19.—Murdered at Ghent, VIII. 36.

*Attigny*, the town of, in Champagne, taken by sir Eustace d'Ambreticourt, II. 461.

*Aubenton*, the town of, taken by the earl of Hainault, I. 177.

*Auberoche*, the town of, in Perigord, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 66.—Retaken by the duke of Anjou, IV. 323.

*Aubriot*, Hugh, liberated by the insurgents at Paris, VI. 15.

*Audley*, sir James, handsomely rewarded by the prince of Wales for his conduct at the battle of Poitiers, II. 341.—His generosity to his squires, 344.—His death, III. 458.

*Audley*, sir Peter, makes an ineffectual attempt to take the town of Chalons, II. 439.

*Avesbury*, Robert of, his history of the progress of Edward the Third in Normandy, quoted, II. 139, *note*.

*Aulnay*, the town of, in Poitou, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 181.

*Auray*,

## INDEX.

- Auray*, the castle of, in Brittany, taken by the lord Charles of Blois, I. 314.—Taken by the lord John de Montford, III. 202.—Surrenders to the French forces in the interest of Charles of Blois, IV. 296.
- Auray*, the battle of, between the lord John de Montford and the lord Charles of Blois, III. 188.
- Austarde*, Wantaire, commands a troop of the free companies at Roullebois, III. 128.
- Auterme*, Roger d', bailiff of Ghent, murdered by the Whitehoeds, V. 114.
- Auterme*, Oliver d', revenges himself on the men of Ghent for the murder of his brother, V. 161.—Banished from Flanders, 167.
- Auvergne*, the city of, taken by the free companies under sir Seguin de Batefol, III. 92.
- Auxene*, the earl of, slain at the battle of Crecy, II. 168.
- Auxene*, the earl of, captured at the battle of Auray, III. 192.—Imprisoned on account of his alliance with don Henry of Castille, 328.
- Aymery*, sir John, captured by the French, VII. 220.—Slain at Sancerre, 224.

## INDEX.

### B.

*Bacon*, a robber in Languedoc, takes the castle of Cobourne, in Limosin, and does other mischief, II. 235.

*Bailleul*, sir William de, defeated in a skirmish at Pont a Tressin, I. 230.

*Bajazet*, the sultan, raises a large force to oppose the king of Hungary and John of Burgundy, who had invaded Turkey, XI. 248.—Marches for Nicopoli, 293.—Defeats the combined Christian armies with great slaughter, 297.—Puts his prisoners, with very few exceptions, to death, 307.—Disbands his army, 319.—A singular instance of his justice, 378.

*Ball*, John, a refractory priest, excites the people of Kent to rebellion, V. 333.—Enters London at their head, 347.—Taken and beheaded, 364.

*Balon*, the castle of, in Auvergne, taken by Amerigot Marcel, V. 78.

*Barfleur*, the town of, in Normandy, taken by Edward the Third, II. 127.

*Barres*, sir Barrois de, (with other French knights) goes to the assistance of the king of Castille, VIII. 7.—Enters Corunna to defend it against

## INDEX.

- against the duke of Lancaster, 16.—Acquires great wealth by destroying the country before the English army, 29.
- St. Basile*, the castle of, in Gascony, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 76.—Retaken by the duke of Anjou, IV. 323.
- Batefol*, sir Seguin de, chosen commander of a band of freebooters in Gascony, III. 74.—Takes the city of Auvergne, 92.
- Battle*, the noted, between thirty Bretons and thirty English, II. 327, *note*.
- Bayeux*, the city of, taken by the French under the lord de Coucy, IV. 376.
- Bayonne*, the town of, besieged by the king of Castille, IV. 381.—Taken by the duke of Lancaster, VIII. 87.
- Bearn*, Peter de, his strange dreams, VII. 207.
- Bearnois*, Perrot le, captain of some free companies, takes the town of Montferrant, in Auvergne, by stratagem, IX. 118.—Abandons it, and retires to his forts, 124.—Takes the field by order of the earl of Arundel, 195.—Over-runs the country of Berry, 204.
- Beaufort*, the cardinal de, elected pope, under the name of Gregory the Eleventh, IV. 115.
- Beaulieu*, William de, captured by the English garrison of Cherbourg, V. 74.

## INDEX.

*Beaumanoir*, the lord of, endeavours to make peace between the lord John de Montford and the lord Charles of Blois, III. 183.

*Beaumont*, sir Henry, takes Edward the Second prisoner, while endeavouring to escape from Bristol, I. 39.

*Beaumont en Laillois*, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 62.

*Beauvais*, the country of, invaded by the English under Edward the Third, II. 145.

*Becherel*, the town of, in Brittany, besieged by the French under the lord de Clifson, IV. 217.  
—Surrenders on terms, 254, 263.

*Bel*, John le, his chronicles adopted by Froissart, as the foundation of his own, I. 2, 5.

*Belleforêt*, Monf. de, an account of his Abridgement of Froissart's Chronicles, I. xciii.

*Belleperch*, the town of, taken by the free companies in the interest of the prince of Wales, III. 450.—Retaken by the duke of Bourbon, IV. 66.

*Benedict*, pope, elected at Avignon, XI. 112.—Forced to resign his dignity by the king of France and the emperor of Germany, XII, 81.—Deposed, 196.

*Benon*, the town of, taken by the English under the earl of Derby, II. 181.—Retaken by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 198.

*Bergerac*, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 60.—Retaken by the duke of Anjou, IV. 317.

*Berkeley*,



## INDEX.

*Berkeley*, Thomas, lord of, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 334.

*Berly*, the town of, taken by the forces of the king of Navarre, II. 417.

*Berners*, lord, his translation of Froissart's Chronicles noticed, I. xciv.

*Berry*, John duke of, returns to France from England, where he had been a hostage for king John, III. 382.—Collects his vassals to make war on the prince of Wales in Aquitaine, 400.—Invades Limousin, IV. 76.—Takes the town of Limoges, 93.—Takes the town of St. Sever, in Saintonge, 182.—Appointed governor of Languedoc, V. 238.—Betroths his daughter to the son of the count de Blois, VI. 380.—Besieges the castle of Ventadour, IX. 93.—Endeavours to win over the duke of Brittany to the French interest, 133.—Proposes to marry the daughter of the duke of Lancaster, 159.—Having failed, he sends to the count de Foix, to demand his ward, the daughter of the count de Boulogne, in marriage, 317.—Is married to her, 344.—Accompanies the king of France in his visit to the pope at Avignon, X. 13.—Claims the liberation of his agent Bethisac, who was under prosecution for mal-administration, 43.

## INDEX.

*Berry*, John of, son of the duke of Berry, marries the lady Mary of France, sister of Charles the Sixth, IX. 128.

*Berry*, the duchess of, petitions her husband in behalf of the lord de la Riviere, XI. 52.—Supports the lord de la Riviere, in opposition to the duchess of Burgundy, 78.

*Bersat*, the town of, taken by the English, V. 30.

*Berwick*, the castle of, taken by Edward the Third, I. 103.—Taken by the Scots, IV. 336.—Retaken by the earl of Northumberland, 344.

*Besenghen*, the fort of, in Gascony, taken by the English under sir Thomas Trivet, V. 35.

*Bessere*, La, the castle of, taken by the French under sir Walter de Paffac, VII. 312.

*Beto*, sir Symon, a citizen of Ghent, put to death for having endeavoured to make peace between that town and the earl of Flanders, VI. 13.

*Bethisac*, John, the confidential agent of the duke of Berry in Toulouse, tried at Beziers for mal-administration, X. 39.—Having confessed himself guilty of heresy, &c. he is burnt to death, 49.

*Bethune*, sir Robert de, takes the fort of La Roche Vandais, X. 177.

*Blanchetaque*, the battle of, between the king of England and sir Godemar du Fay, II. 153.

*Blancque.*

## INDEX.

*Blancquefort*, Henry de, brother of the emperor of Germany, forcibly marries Margaret of Hungary, who had been betrothed to Louis de Valois, VII. 48.

*Blayes*, the town of, besieged by the earl of Derby, II. 92.

*Blois*, the earl of, slain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 168.

*Blois*, lord Charles of, claims the duchy of Brittany, I. 266.—Declared the lawful duke of Brittany by the parliament of Paris, 269.—Enters Brittany with a large force, assisted by the king of France, 271.—Conquers several towns in the duchy, 272 *et seq.*—Takes his adversary, the earl of Montford, prisoner, 276.—Takes the town of Rennes, 299.—Besieges the countess of Montford in Hennebon, 300.—Takes the castle of Aurai, 314.—Takes the town of Vannes by storm, 315.—Takes the town of Carhaix, II. 8.—Obtains possession of the town of Jugon by treachery, 15.—Enters into a truce with the countess of Montford, 16.—Besieges La Roche d'Errien, 211.—Taken prisoner by the forces of the countess, 213.—Sent to England, 234.—Returns to France, 375.—Raises an army to oppose lord John de Montford, III. 175.—Killed at the battle of Auray, 193.—Canonized by Urban the Fifth, 197.

*Blois.*

## INDEX.

*Blois*, Guy, count de, returns from England, where he had been hostage for king John, III. 383.—Joins the king of France against England, IV. 69.—Sells the reversion of the county of Blois to the duke of Touraine, X. 340.—Dies at Avennes, in Hainault, XII. 22.

*Blois*, John of, marries the widow of William, count of Juliers, IX. 58.—His death, 59.

*Blois*, lord Lewis of, marries the lady Mary of Berry, IX. 128.—Dies in Hainault, X. 280.

*Blois*, the county of, the reversion of it sold to the duke of Touraine, X. 340.

*Blondeau*, sir John, surrenders the castle of La Roche sur Yon to the duke of Cambridge, III. 456.—Put to death in consequence, 457.

*Bodenay*, sir Theobald de, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 331.

*Bohemia*, Charles of Luxembourg king of, slain at the battle of Crecy, II. 164.

*Bois*, Peter du, a citizen of Ghent, chosen one of the commanders of the Whitehoods in that city, V. 131.—Narrowly escapes being put to death, 308.—Besieges Courtray, 309.—Obtains the appointment of Philip von Artaveld to be governor of Ghent, 321.—Defends the pass of Communes against the army of the king of France, VI. 174.—  
Defeated,

## INDEX.

Defeated, with great slaughter, 189.—Prevents the town of Bruges from surrendering to the king of France, 204.—Retreats to Ghent after the defeat of Philip von Artaveld, 231.—Encourages the men of Ghent to withstand the army of the king of France, 239.—After a peace being concluded between the duke of Burgundy, as heir of Flanders, and the men of Ghent, he retires to England, VII. 109.

*Boniface* IX. elected pope by the cardinals of Rome, X. 68.—Sends a learned friar to the king of France to endeavour to gain him over to his interest, XI. 77.

*Bonneval*, the castle of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 64.

*Bordes*, sir William de, captured by the garrison of Cherbourg, V. 74.

*Boteler*, sir John, of Warrington, captured at Roche Perion, II. 5.—Narrowly escapes being put to death, 13.

*Boucicault*, the lord of, taken prisoner at Remorantin by the prince of Wales, II. 300.—Appointed to the command of an expedition against the king of Navarre, III. 128.—Takes the town of Mante by stratagem, 131.—Takes the town of Meulan, 131.

*Boucicaut*, sir, the younger, with two other French knights, holds a tournament near Calais against all comers, X. 89.

*Boucicaut*,

## INDEX.

*Boucicaut*, the lord, taken prisoner by the Turks at the battle of Nicopoli, X. 301.—Obtains his ransom, XII. 1.—Arrives at Venice, 9.—Appointed marshal of France, 17.—Obliges pope Benedict to submit to the emperor of Germany and the king of France, 81.—Sent to Hungary against the Turks, 82.

*Boule*, John, a citizen of Ghent, appointed one of the captains of the Whitehoods in that city, V. 131.—Put to death by the men of Ghent, 290.

*Bourbon*, sir James de, captured by the English at the battle of Poitiers, II. 335.—Sent by the king of France to oppose the free companies, III. 76.—Completely defeated by them at the battle of Brignais, 83.—His death, 84.

*Bourbon*, duke Peter de, slain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 331.

*Bourbon*, duke Louis de, takes the castle of Belleperche, IV. 66.—Heads an army into Poitou and Limousin, VII. 6.—Takes Montlieu in Saintonge, 8.—Besieges Taillebourg, 9.—Takes Verteuil and returns to Paris, 51.—Appointed to the command of an army to assist the king of Castille against the duke of Lancaster, VIII. 155.—Arrives at Burgos, IX. 29.—Returns to France, 31.—Magnificently entertained by the count de Foix, 34.—Appointed commander

## INDEX.

mander in chief of an expedition against Barbary, X. 129.—Embarks at Genoa, 131.—Lands with his army before the town of Africa, which he besieges, 195.—His army suffers from the heat and insalubrity of the climate, 208.—Abandons the siege and returns to France, 240.—Makes an ineffectual attempt to gain over the towns of Aquitaine during the imprisonment of king Richard the Second, in the Tower, XII. 172.

*Bourchier*, sir John, appointed governor of Ghent, VI. 365.—Retires to England, VII. 109.

*Bourdeaux*, the town of, besieged by the French under the earl of Lisle, I. 219.

————, the archbishop of, imprisoned at Barcelona, VIII. 130.—Liberated, 134.

*Bourdeilles*, the town of, taken by the English under the duke of Cambridge, III. 446.

*Bournezet*, sir Peter, lord de, sent on an embassy from the king of France to the king of Scotland, V. 60.—Arrested at Sluys by order of the earl of Flanders, 62.—Returns to Paris, 63.

*Boutville*, the town of, taken by the French, V. 56.

*Brabant*, the duke of, joins the English forces before Cambray, I. 143.—Purchases three castles belonging to the duke of Gueldres, IX. 61.—Appointed chief of the Langue-fride,



## INDEX.

*fride*, 63.—Invades the country of Juliers, 67.—Defeated and taken prisoner by the dukes of Juliers and Gueldres, 69.—Obtains his liberty, 73.—His death, 76.

*Brabant*, the duchess of, forms a marriage between the children of Burgundy and those of Hainault, VI. 374.—Causes the daughter of duke Stephen of Bavaria to be brought to France to be married to Charles the Sixth, VII. 29.—Applies to the Emperor to interest himself to obtain the liberation of her husband from the duke of Juliers, IX. 69.—Sends ambassadors to solicit the assistance of France against the duke of Gueldres, 84.—Besieges Grave, 153.—Makes peace with the duke of Gueldres, 303.

*Brabanters*, the, besiege Grave, IX. 153.—Defeated with great slaughter at the bridge of Ravestein, 212.—Abandon the siege of Grave, 213.—Refuse to permit the king of France and his army to march through their country, 224.

*Bramber*, sir Nicholas, beheaded by order of the duke of Gloucester, &c. VIII. 359.

*Brantome*, the town of, taken by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 107.

*Brulow* MS. of Froissart's Chronicles noticed, L. xci.

*Brest*,

## INDEX.

*Brest*, the castle of, taken by the earl of Montford as duke of Brittany, I. 257.—Besieged by the French under sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 225.—Succoured by the earl of Salisbury, 233.—Besieged by sir Oliver de Clifton, 375.—Besieged a second time by him, VII. 303.

*Breteuil*, the castle of, taken by the king of France, II. 293.

*Breuse*, the viscount de, captured by the prince of Wales at the battle of Poitiers, II. 304.

*Brian*, sir Guy, defeats a Flemish fleet off the isle of Bas, on the coast of Brittany, IV. 142.

*Brignais*, the castle of, taken by the freebooting companies, III. 78.

———, the battle of, between lord James of Bourbon and the freebooters, III. 80.

*Brimeu*, the lord de, taken prisoner by the English near Arras, V. 192.

*Brioude*, the town of, surrenders to the French, VII. 233.

*Bristol*, besieged by Isabella, queen of Edward the Second, to obtain possession of her husband and the two sir Hugh Spencers, I. 27.—Surrenders to her forces, 28.

*Brittany*, John duke of, his death, I. 251.

*Brittany*, duke of.—Vide Montford, John de.

*Brittany*, John of, son of the lord Charles of Blois, obtains his ransom, after having been long imprisoned in England, VIII. 152.  
—Marries

## INDEX.

—Marries the daughter of sir Oliver de Clifton, 152.

*Brittany*, the lords of, undertake the wardship of their young duke, on the death of his father John de Montford, XII. 188.

*Brittany*, the duchy of, adjudged to the lord Charles of Blois by the parliament of Paris, I. 269.

*Bruce*, Robert, king of Scotland, defeats the English under Edward the Second, at the battle of Bannockburn, I. 8.—Sends a defiance to Edward the Third, I. 38.—Invades England, 46.—His dying request to lord James Douglas, 71.—His death, 74.

*Bruce*, Robert, succeeds to the crown of Scotland on the death of David the Second, IV. 219.—Enters into an alliance with the king of France, 334.—Makes preparations to invade England, 335.—Sends to excuse himself to the king of England for some inroads which the Scots, contrary to his orders, had made into England, 353.—Assembles a large army to invade England, with the assistance of the admiral of France, VII. 53.

*Bruges*, the town of, enters into an alliance with the men of Ghent, V. 128.—Taken by the men of Ghent, VI. 98.—Its gates and walls demolished, 110.—Submits to the mercy of the king of France, after the defeat

## INDEX.

feat of the men of Ghent under Philip von Artaveld, 235.

*Brunes*, lord Bartholomew de, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 336.

*Brunx*, the town of, taken by the English under sir James Audley, III. 430.

*Buch*, the captal of, defeats the infamous Jacques of Beauvoisis, with great slaughter, II. 393.—Takes the town of Clermont, in Beauvoisis, 424.—Joins the king of Navarre, III. 132.—Captured at the battle of Cocherel, in Normandy, 156.—Makes peace between the kings of France and Navarre, and obtains his liberty, 209.—Prevents the town of Lourde from being given up to the French, IV. 79.—Taken by the French at Soubise, 188.—Imprisoned in the Temple at Paris, 199.—His death, 289.

*Buckingham*, the earl of, appointed to the command of an army to go to the assistance of the duke of Brittany, V. 181.—Arrives at Calais, and marches into France, 182.—Burns and despoils the country of Champagne, 196.—Overruns the countries of Gatmois and Beauce, 210.—Crosses the Sarthe with great difficulty, 223.—Arrives at Vannes, in Brittany, greatly dissatisfied with the conduct of the duke of Brittany, 232.—Besieges Nantes, 243.—Remonstrates with the duke of Brittany for not

## INDEX.

having joined him, 247, 251.—Raises the siege of Nantes, 255.—Arrives at Vannes, 258.—Returns to England in disgust, 276.—Suspected of favouring the rebellion of Wat Tyler and Jack Straw, 343.—Created duke of Gloucester, VIII. 118. [For the remaining particulars of this prince, see Gloucester, duke of.]

*Bucq*, sir John de, admiral of Flanders, defeated and captured by the English fleet under the earl of Arundel, VIII. 159.—Dies in London, 164.

*Budes*, Silvester, makes war on the Romans on the behalf of pope Clement, V. 81.—Beheaded at Mascon, 94.

*Buffiere*, the lord Pierre de, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 332.

*Burghersh*, sir Bartholomew, takes the castle of Cormiry, in Champagne, III. 26.

*Burgundy*, Philip duke of, enters into a composition with Edward the Third to spare his duchy, in his march through France, III. 31.—His death, 95.

*Burgundy*, Philip (son of king John of France) duke of, his creation, III. 160.—Sent against the free companies into Caux, &c. 162.—Takes the castle of Marcheville, and several other places in Beauce, 116 et seq.—Invades great part of the country of Montbelliard, 170.—Takes the town of  
La

## INDEX.

La Charité, 172.—Appointed to the command of an army to go into Spain against don Pedro, 217.—Enters Spain, 219.—Marries the daughter of the earl of Flanders, 420.—Appointed to the command of an armament against England, 451.—Ordered to march against the duke of Lancaster at Calais, IV. 2.—Takes the towns of Ardres and Ardvick, 288.—Makes peace between the earl of Flanders and the men of Ghent, V. 143.—Appointed governor of Picardy, 238.—Instigates the king of France to make war on Flanders, VI. 126.—Sends succours to the earl of Flanders to oppose the bishop of Norwich, 289.—Obtains the town of Sluys in exchange for the country of Bethune, VII. 39.—Makes peace with the men of Ghent, 96.—Sends forces to the assistance of the dukes of Brabant, against the duke of Gueldres, IX. 95.—Goes to Blois to meet the duke of Brittany, 183.—Accompanies the king of France in his visit to the pope, at Avignon, X. 13.—Ordered to return, to his great dissatisfaction, 17.—Appointed regent of France, during the derangement of Charles the Sixth, XI. 30.—Treats sir Oliver de Clifton, the constable of France, harshly, 40.—Arrests several of the king's council, 43.

## INDEX:

Created duke of York, VIII. 118. [For the remaining particulars of this prince see York, the duke of.]

*Camerolles*, the castle of, taken by the duke of Burgundy, III. 167.

*Campreny*, the lord of, captured by the capital of Buch, III. 38.

*Candorier*, John, mayor of La Rochelle, obtains possession of the castle from the English, by stratagem, IV. 193.

*Canterbury*, the archbishop of, sent to Bristol by the duke of Gloucester and the Londoners, on an embassy to Richard the Second, VIII. 361.—Conducts him to London, 363.—Sent to France with an application from the Londoners to the earl of Derby to return to England, XII. 114.—Conducts the earl to London, 127.

*Caponnal*, Caponnel de, liberated by exchange, IV. 54.

*Capital*, the title explained, II. 305. *note*.

*Carcilbart*, the fort of, taken by the English under sir Thomas Trivet, V. 35.

*Carentan*, the town of, taken by Edward the Third, II. 128.—Retaken by the French under the lord de Coucy, IV. 377.

*Carhaix*, the town of, taken by the lord Charles of Blois, II. 8.

*Carogne*, sir John de, kills James le Gris in a mortal combat, VIII. 126.

*Carquefois*,



## INDEX.

*Carquefois*, the town of, taken by the lord Charles of Blois, I. 273.

*Cassel*, the battle of, I. 80.

*Casseres*, the town of, taken by the count de Foix, VII. 142.

*Cassuriel*, the castle of, in Auvergne, taken by Amerigot Marcel, V. 76.

*Castillon*, the town of, taken by the duke of Anjou, IV. 321.

*Cervole*, Arnould de, the archpriest, collects a body of armed men and pillages Provence, II. 380.—Captured at the battle of Brignais, III. 83.

*Chalons*, the town of, unsuccessfully attacked by sir Peter Audley, II. 439.

*Chalons*, the bishop of, slain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 331.

*Chandos*, sir John, receives the lands of St. Sauveur le Vicomte as a gift from the king of England, III. 63.—Appointed regent over all the possessions of the king of England in France, 71.—Appointed constable of Guienne, 102.—Sent to the assistance of the lord John de Montford in Brittany, 174.—Prevents a peace being concluded between John de Montford and the lord Charles of Blois, 187.—Defeats the army of lord Charles at the battle of Auray, 194.—Advises the prince of Wales not to persevere in his design of enforcing the fouage or

## INDEX.

hearth-tax, and failing to succeed retires to his country seat, 344.—Recalled by the prince, and sent to make war on the French and Gascon lords, 389.—Takes the town of Terrieres, and several others in the Toulousain, 411, et seq.—Appointed seneschal of Poitou, 458.—Invades and pillages the territories of Anjou and Rochechouart, IV. 8.—Killed in a skirmish at the bridge of Luffac, 45.

*Chargny*, the lord de, slain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 336.

———, Sir Geoffry de, endeavours to gain possession of Calais, by bribing the governor sir Aymery de Parie, II. 240.—Defeated by the king of England, 246.—Embarks for Scotland to offer his assistance against England, VI. 347.—Returns, and is in great danger from the Zealanders, 358.

*Chargny en Dormois*, the castle of, taken by sir John Chandos, III. 17.

*Charité La*, the town of, in the Nivernois, taken by the lord Lewis of Navarre, III. 165.—Taken by the duke of Burgundy, 172.—Taken a second time by the French, VII. 224.

*Charles*, emperor of Germany, his death, V. 148.

*Charles*

## INDEX.

*Charles of Bohemia*, emperor of Germany, collects a large army to make war on the duke of Gueldres in the cause of the duchess of Brabant, IX. 70.—Receives his submission, 73.

*Charles the Fourth*, king of France, takes measures to assist his sister Isabella, queen of Edward the Second, against her husband and the Spencers, I. 14.—Is prevailed upon by sir Hugh Spencer to break up the expedition which he had encouraged his sister to raise in France, 17.—Commands her to quit the kingdom, 18.—His death, 79.

*Charles the Fifth*, of France, crowned at Rheims, III. 160.—Makes peace with the lord John de Montford, and acknowledges him lawful duke of Brittany, 207.—Makes peace with the king of Navarre, 209.—Raises an army to make war on don Pedro, king of Castille, 215.—Is advised to declare himself lord paramount of Guienne, and to renew the war with England, 365, 373.—Summons the prince of Wales to appear before the parliament of Paris to answer the complaints of some Gascon lords, 374.—Makes preparations to renew the war against the English, 381.—Gains over several captains of the free companies, 290.—Sends his challenge to the king of England, 392.—Prepares an armament for the invasion of England, 451.—Breaks up the expedition in consequence of the arrival of the duke of Lancaster

## INDEX.

Lancaſter at Calais, IV. 2.—aſſembles a large force, to make war on Aquitaine, 68.—Makes peace with the king of Navarre, 71.—Enters into an alliance with don Henry, king of Caſtile, 148.—Makes peace with the king of Navarre, 218.—Sends an army to invade the duchy of Brittany, 220.—Enters into a truce with the Engliſh, 271.—Fits out a fleet for the invaſion of England, which does conſiderable miſchief, 284.—Declares war againſt the king of Navarre, 291.—Inſtigates the king of Scotland to make war on England, 334.—Seizes the poſſeſſions of the king of Navarre in Normandy, 368.—Sends an ambaffador to the king of Scotland, V. 60.—His ambaffador detained by the earl of Flanders, 65.—Orders the earl of Flanders to ſend the duke of Brittany out of his dominions, 65.—Puts himſelf under obedience to Clement as the lawful pope, 82.—Afflicted with a ſingular diſorder, 217.—His laſt words and advice on his death bed, 219.—Dies at Paris, 224.

*Charles the Sixth*, of France, crowned at Rheims, V. 352.—Sends an army to the aſſiſtance of the king of Caſtile, VI. 29.—Determines to make war on Flanders in behalf of the earl, 126.—On account of a dream, he chooſes a flying hart for his device, 131.—endeavours to treat with the Flemings, 145.—collects a large force to reduce them  
to



## INDEX.

to obedience, 157.—Defeats the Flemish army at the bridge of Commynes, 196.—Receives the submission of Ypres and several other places, 198 *et seq.*—Defeats the Flemings, under Philip von Artaveld, with great slaughter, 227.—Enters Courtray, 232.—Receives the submission of Bruges, 235.—Returns to France, 246.—Makes his entrance into Paris, 252.—Assembles a large army to oppose the bishop of Norwich in Flanders, 294.—Takes Cassel, 305, and Bourbourg, 329.—Returns to France, 331.—Enters into a truce with England, 337.—Prepares to renew the war, 368.—Marries the lady Isabella, of Bavaria, VII. 34.—Makes great preparations to invade England, VIII. 31.—Promises to assist the king of Castille, 48.—Joins his armament at Sluys, 102.—Puts off his design, and disbands his army, 117.—Makes preparations to assist the king of Castille, 154.—Prepares another armament against England, under sir Oliver de Clifton, 224.—His designs frustrated by the arrest of sir Oliver by the duke of Brittany, 242.—Receives an insulting defiance from the duke of Gueldres, 263.—Commands the duke of Brittany to restore to sir Oliver de Clifton the places which he had unjustly taken from him for his ransom, 302.—Receives a haughty answer from him, 305.—Promises to assist the duchess of Brabant

## INDEX.

Brabant against the duke of Juliers, IX. 85.  
 —Invites the duke of Ireland (who had been banished England by the duke of Gloucester and his party) to reside in France, 143.—Prepares an army to invade Guelderland, 218.—Sends ambassadors to explain his intentions to the emperor of Germany, 220.—Receives favourable answers, 232.—Enters the duchy of Juliers, 293.—Receives the submission of the duke of Gueldres, 303.—Returns to France, 304.—Takes upon himself the government of France, on coming of age, 310.—Sends ambassadors to the king of Castille, to remonstrate with him on the marriage of his son, the infanta of Spain, with the daughter of the duke of Lancaster, 312.—Enters into a truce with the king of England, 347.—Orders the duke of Ireland to quit France, X. 10.—Visits the pope at Avignon, 13.—Visits Montpellier, &c. 18 *et seq.*—Receives the homage of the count de Foix at Toulouse, 58.—Travels with great speed from Montpellier to Paris, for a wager against the duke of Touraine, 62.—Reproves the count d'Ostrevant for accepting the order of the Garter from the king of England, 233.—Proposes to march to Italy to restore the union of the church, 247.—Receives ambassadors from the king of England with propositions for a peace, 250.—On the death of the count de Foix, sends

## INDEX.

sends ambassadors to Orthes, to make some arrangements respecting the country, 302.—Meets the duke of Brittany at Tours, to make an amicable settlement of the differences between them, 320.—Acknowledges the viscount de Chateaubon heir and successor to the count de Foix, 326.—agrees to marry his daughter to the son of the duke of Brittany, 333.—Receives the commissioners from the king of England at Amiens, 347.—Not being able to conclude a peace, he enters into a truce for a year, 353.—Commands the duke of Brittany to deliver up sir Peter de Craon, who had fled to Brittany, after attempting to assassinate sir Oliver de Clifton, XI. 2.—After receiving the duke's refusal, he leads an army against him towards Brittany, 7.—arrives at Mans, 9.—is accosted by a madman in the forest of Mans, who orders him to return, 19.—Becomes deranged, 22.—His expedition is, in consequence, broken up, 24.—Removed to Creil for the benefit of his health, 29.—Recovers his senses, 61.—Returns to Paris, 67.—In great danger of losing his life at a masked dance, 72.—Appoints commissioners to negotiate a peace with the king of England at Leulinghen, 95.—prolongs the truce with him, 105.—Relapses into his former malady, 109.—Sends ambassadors to the duke of Lancaster



## INDEX.

- ville, IV. 37.—Escapes from England, 258.
- Chaumont*, the hermit, taken prisoner at Remorantin by the prince of Wales, II. 300.
- Chauvoigny*, the lord of, taken prisoner by the prince of Wales, II. 304.—quits the party of the prince of Wales for that of the king of France, III. 428.
- Chauvoigny*, the town of, in Poitou, taken by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 173.
- Gherbourg*, the town of, burnt and pillaged by Edward the Third, II. 128.—Besieged by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 293.
- Chimay*, the town of, pillaged by the French, I. 167.
- Civray*, the town of, in Poitou, taken by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 213.
- Civray*, the battle of, IV. 212.
- Clement the Sixth*, pope, dies at Avignon, II. 273.
- Clement the Seventh*, pope, elected during the life-time of Urban the Sixth, which causes a schism in the church, V. 80.—Is acknowledged by the king of France, &c. 82.—Goes to Avignon, 91.—Presents the duke of Anjou with the territories of the queen of Naples, which she had given up to his disposal, 91.—Dies at Avignon, XI. 111.
- Clermont*, the town of, in Beauvoisis, taken by the capital of Buch, II. 424.

*Clermont*,

## INDEX.

*Clermont*, the cardinal of, elected pope, under the name of Innocent the Sixth, II. 273.

*Clermont*, lord John, slain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 323.

*Cliffon*, the lord of, captured at Vannes, II. 36. exchanged for lord Stafford, 43.—Beheaded at Paris, 44.

*Cliffon*, sir Oliver de, besieges the town of Becherel, IV. 217.—Besieges La Roche sur Yon, 225.—Takes the town of Dinant, V. 152.—Appointed constable of France, 237.—Besieges Brest, VII. 303.—His fleet dispersed by a storm on his voyage to Sluys, to join the armament of the king of France, VIII. 112.—Obtains the liberation of John of Brittany from England, and marries him to his daughter, 152.—Makes preparations to invade England, 224, 232.—Arrested by the duke of Brittany at the castle of Ermine, 242.—Obtains his liberty, 257.—Complains to the king of France of the conduct of the duke of Brittany, and offers to resign his office of constable, 259.—Retires to Montlehery, 261.—Takes the towns of St. Malo and St. Matthieu de Fine Pôterne, IX. 155.—His castles restored to him by the duke of Brittany, 169.—Way-laid and severely wounded by sir Peter de Craon, X. 367.—On account of his wealth, he incurs the suspicions and hatred of the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, XI. 4.—Treated with great

## INDEX.

harshness by the duke of Burgundy, 40.—  
Retires from Paris, 41.—Summoned to ap-  
pear before the parliament of Paris, 55.—  
Not answering to the summons, he is ban-  
nished the kingdom, 56.—Wages a violent  
warfare against the duke of Brittany, 88.  
—Makes peace with him, 200.

*Cliffon*, sir Walter de, slain at Brest, I. 256.

*Cobourne*, the castle of, in Limoufin, taken by a  
robber of the name of Bacon, II. 235.

*Cocherel*, the battle of, in Normandy, III. 154.

*Combat*, the noted, between thirty Bretons and  
thirty English, II. 237, *note*.

———— between sir Bertrand du Guesclin and sir  
Nicholas Dagworth, at Rennes, II. 374.

———— between sir Aymon de Pommiers and sir  
Foulque d'Archiac, before the king of  
France at Villeneuve, III. 103.

———— remarkable one at Lar, between the garri-  
son of Lourde and Tarbe, VII. 166.

———— a mortal, at Paris, between sir John de  
Carogae and James le Gris, VIII. 126.

*Comacte*, the town of, in Turkey, taken by storm  
by the combined christian armies under  
the king of Hungary and John of Bur-  
gundy, XI. 234.

*Comfit Box*, (*drageoir*) a spice box used in the  
desert of the great, some account of it, X.  
56, *note*.

*Com-*

## INDEX.

*Commissioners* sent to France, to execute the condition of the peace between France and England, III. 69.

—— appointed to examine into the conduct of the managers of the finances under Richard the Second, VIII. 319.—Commit fir Simon Burley to the Tower, 322.—Condemn him to death, 327.—Appoint a new council for the king, 330.

*Concarneau*, the town of, taken by fir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 225.

*Conferences* held at Avignon between the French and English to negotiate a peace, II. 279.

—— held at Leulinghen for the same purpose, XI. 96.

*Connic*, the castle of, taken by the duke of Burgundy, III. 169.

*Conquet*, the castle of, taken by the forces of the lord Charles of Blois, I. 311.—Retaken by fir Walter Manney, 312.

*Constance*, the lady, daughter of don Pedro, king of Castile, married to the duke of Lancaster, IV. 147.

*Convalle*, the castle of, taken by the French under fir Walter de Passac, VII. 320.

*Copeland*, John, captures the king of Scotland at the battle of Nevil's Cross, II. 190.—Delivers him up to the queen of England by order of king Edward, who was at Calais, 199.

## INDEX.

- Corasse*, the lord of, said to have been served by a familiar spirit called Orthon, VII. 294.
- Cormicy*, the castle of, taken by sir Bartholomew Burgherst, III. 26.
- Coucy*, the lord de, declines taking any part in the wars between the kings of France and England, IV. 52.—Leads a large army into Austria, 275.—Returns without having effected any thing, 278.—Takes the town of Bayeux, &c. 376.—Takes the town of Evreux, V. 10.—Appointed governor of Picardy, 176.—Appeases the Parisian insurgents, VI. 16.—Endeavours to gain over the duke of Brittany to the French interest, IX. 164.—Accompanies the lord Lewis of Anjou, king of Sicily, to Arragon, X. 3.—Refuses to accept the office of constable of France after the disgrace of sir Oliver de Clifton, XI. 82.—Defeats a large Turkish force near Nicopoli, 252.—Captured at the battle of Nicopoli, 301.—Dies at Bursay in Turkey, 366.
- Couty*, the lord Raoul de, captured at Manconfeil, II. 415.
- Coulogne*, sir Robert de, slain in a skirmish at Tournehem, IV. 24.
- Council of State*, a new one appointed for Richard the Second by the commissioners of accounts, VIII. 330.
- Courtray*, the town of, turns to the interest of the earl of Flanders, V. 292.—Besieged by  
the

## INDEX.

- the men of Ghent under Peter du Bois, 309.  
 —Burnt by order of the king of France,  
 VI. 242.
- Coutantin*, the battle of, between the French and  
 English, II. 362.
- Craon*, the lord of, taken prisoner by the prince of  
 Wales at Romorantin, II. 300.
- Craon*, sir Peter de, incurs the displeasure of the  
 king of France, X. 285.—Retires to Brit-  
 tany, 286.—Way-lays and endeavours to  
 assassinate sir Oliver de Clifton, 367.—Takes  
 refuge in Brittany, 373.—Endeavours to  
 make his peace with the king of France,  
 X. 202.—Prosecuted in the courts of Paris  
 by the dukes of Anjou, 203.—Judgment  
 being given against him, he is committed  
 to prison, 223.—Obtains his liberty, 290.  
 —Accompanies Henry, earl of Derby, into  
 England, XII. 122.
- Crecy*, the battle of, II. 163.
- Credo*, the castle of, in Brittany, taken by sir  
 Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 229.
- Creil*, the town of, taken by the king of Navarre,  
 II. 411.
- Croisade*, preached against the Saracens, I. 107.—  
 against the free-booting companies by pope  
 Innocent the Seventh, III. 88.
- Croquart*, a page, turns rebel, II. 236.—Killed  
 by the fall of his horse, 239.

## INDEX.

*Crotoy*, the town of, taken by Edward the Third, II. 155.—Retaken by sir Hugh de Chatillon, III. 397.

## D.

*Daggeworth*, sir Thomas, sent into Brittany to the assistance of the countess de Montford, II. 52.—Taken prisoner before La Roche d'Errien, 212.—Killed in Brittany, 267.

*Daire*, John, a citizen of Calais, his patriotic conduct during the siege of that city by Edward the Third, II. 225.

*Dalkeith*, the castle of, taken by Edward the Third, I. 101.

*Damazan*, the castle of, taken by the duke of Normandy, II. 114.

*Dammartin*, the earl of, slain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 336.

*Dampmartin*, the lord de, resists the dukes of Berry and Burgundy in their attempts to break off the marriage of his daughter with the son of the lord de la Riviere, XI. 51.

*Damme*, the town of, taken by the men of Ghent, VI. 106. VII. 32.—Taken by the king of France, 43.

*David the Second*, king of Scotland, retires to France, I. 130.—Enters into an alliance with



## INDEX.

with king Philip, 132.—Returns to Scotland, 281.—Assembles an army to invade England, 282.—Takes the town of Durham, 286.—Besieges Wark castle, 286.—Returns to Scotland, 291.—Invades England a second time, II. 186.—Defeated and taken prisoner at Nevil's Cross, 189.—Sent to the Tower of London, 199.—Liberated by a treaty of peace, 372.—Comes to England to meet the king of Cyprus, III. 115.—Enters into a truce with the king of England, IV. 81.—His death, 219.

*Death*, remarkable, of a soldier, who had sacrilegiously robbed the church of Ronay, in Champagne, II. 456.

*Dedication*, I. iii.

*Deed of arms*, between sir Thomas Harpurgan and sir John des Barres, IX. 191.

——— between five English and five French knights, before the duke of Lancaster at Bourdeaux, IX. 336.

*Deputations* from the different towns of England wait on Richard the Second at Windsor to lay their grievances before him, and to demand redress, VIII. 316.

*Derby*, the earl of, appointed to the command of a large army to go into Gascony, II. 51.—Takes Bergerac and several other places in Gascony, 60 et seq.—Created duke of Lancaster, 253.

## INDEX.

*Derby*, Henry earl of, marries the lady Mary, daughter of the earl of Hereford, V. 241.  
 —Appointed the lieutenant of his father, the duke of Lancaster, during his absence in Spain, VII<sup>l</sup>. 4.—Challenged by the earl marshal of England in the presence of the king, XII. 44.—Banished the kingdom, 56.—Goes to Paris, 63.—The people of England rise in his favour, 109.—Receives a request from the people of London to return to England, 116.—Arrives in London, 128.—Undertakes the government of England, and determines to seize the throne, 129.—Marches towards Bristol against Richard the Second, 130.—Takes him prisoner, and conducts him to London, 140.—Crowned king of England under the title of Henry the Fourth, 160.—In danger of being murdered by the earls of Huntingdon and Salisbury, 180.

*Derval*, the castle of, besieged by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 227.—Relieved by sir Robert Knolles, 234.

*Desponde*, Dinde, a rich merchant, employed to negotiate the ransom of John of Burgundy and his companions from the sultan Bajazet, XI. 334.

*Destournay*, the lord, takes the town of Oudenarde by stratagem, VI. 363.

*Devéreux*, sir John, takes the castle of Uzes, in Auvergne, IV. 135.

*Dighos*

## INDEX.

*Dighas*, the town of, in Galicia, surrenders to the duke of Lancaster's army, VIII. 84.

*Dinant*, the town of, in Brittany, taken by the forces of the lord Charles of Blois, I. 312.—Taken by the English under Edward the Third, II. 37.—Surrenders to the lord John de Montford, III. 203.—Taken by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 222.—Taken by sir Oliver de Clifton, V. 152.

*Dissentions* at York between the archers of England and the Hainalters, I. 41.

*Dormans*, sir William de, preaches the justice of the cause of the French king, III. 414.

*Doublet*, Oliver, beheaded at Rouen, II. 290.

*Douglas*, sir Archibald, defeated and captured by sir Thomas Musgrave, near Milrose, IV. 352.

*Douglas*, lord James, departs for the Holy Land to fulfil the request of Robert Bruce the First, I. 74.—Killed in Spain, fighting against the Saracens, 76.

*Douglas*, lord William, takes the castle of Edinburgh by stratagem, I. 222.—Taken prisoner at the battle of Nevil's Cross, II. 196.

*Douglas*, the earl of, invades England with a large force, IX. 246.—Takes the pennon of sir Henry Percy before Newcastle, 248.—Slain at the battle of Otterbourne, 258.

*Dream*,

## INDEX.

- Dream*, remarkable, of Charles the Sixth of France, VI. 128.
- Drue*, the castle of, taken by the duke of Normandy, III. 168.
- Duel*, at Paris, between James le Gris and John de Carogne, VIII. 126.
- Dumbarton*, the castle of, taken by Edward the Third, I. 100.
- Dumfermline*, the town of, destroyed by Richard the Second, VII. 69.
- Dundee*, the town of, burnt by Richard the Second, VII. 70.
- Dunkirk*, the town of, taken by the bishop of Norwich, VI. 282.
- Duras*, the town of, taken by storm by the duke of Anjou, IV. 329.
- Duras*, the lord de, captured by the French under the duke of Anjou, IV. 314.—Turns to the French interest, but quits it afterwards, 319.
- Durazzo*, the lord Charles de, defends the kingdom of Naples against the pretensions of the duke of Anjou, VI. 38.—Put to death in Hungary, VII. 22.
- Durham*, the city of, taken and destroyed by the Scots, I. 286.—[This account supposed to be fabulous, 291, *note*.]

## INDEX.

### E.

*Edinburgh*, the town of, taken by Edward the Third, I. 99.—Retaken by sir William Douglas, 222.—Destroyed by Richard the Second, VII. 68.

*Edward the First*, king of England, his character and successes, I. 7.—His singular request on his death-bed, 105.

*Edward the Second*, his character, I. 7.—An account of his family relations, 8.—Influenced in his government by sir Hugh Spencer, 10.—Shuts himself up in Bristol against the queen and her party, 27.—Taken prisoner by them, 30.—Confined in Berkeley Castle, 31.—Publicly deposed, and sentenced by the people of England to be imprisoned during his life, 35.

*Edward the Third*, crowned king of England, I. 35.—Receives a defiance from Robert Bruce, king of Scotland, 38.—Leads a large army to oppose the invasion of the Scots, 45.—Returns, 64.—Marries the lady Philippa of Hainault, 70.—Enters into a truce with the Scots, 71.—Does homage to the king of France for the duchy of Guienne, 88.—Raises an army to invade Scotland, 99.—Takes Edinburgh and several

## INDEX.

ral other places, 99, et seq.—Returns to England, 103.—Takes measures to make war on the king of France, 111.—Solicits the friendship of the Flemings, 118.—Passes over to Flanders, and makes great alliances in the empire, 126.—Appointed vicar-general of the empire of Germany, 130.—Sends his defiance to the king of France, 137.—Besieges Cambray, 142.—Marches into France, 146.—Returns to Hainault, 161.—Assumes the arms of France, 164.—Returns to England, 165.—Sails with a large armament for Flanders, 207.—Defeats the French at sea, and arrives at Ghent, 211.—Besieges Tournay, 216.—Returns to England in consequence of a truce being entered into, 249.—Receives the homage of lord John de Montford for the duchy of Brittany, 265.—Assembles an army to oppose an invasion of the Scots, 285.—Is enamoured with the countess of Salisbury, 292.—Sends a force to the assistance of the lord de Montford, 299.—Makes great feasts out of affection for the countess of Salisbury, II. 17.—Sends reinforcements into Brittany, II. 20.—Heads a large army into Brittany, 31.—Besieges the town of Vannes, 32.—Besieges and takes several other places, 33, et seq.—Enters into a truce with the French, and returns to England, 43.—Institutes the order of the garter, 43.—Founds the chapel  
of

## INDEX.

of St. George at Windsor, 46.—Sends his defiance to the king of France, 49.—Appoints the earl of Derby to the command of an expedition into Gascony, 51.—Heads a large army into Normandy, 125.—Takes the town of Barfleur, and several others, 127, et seq.—Marches towards Paris, destroying the country on his way, 143.—Distressed to find a passage over the Somme, 148.—Is conducted to one by a peasant named Gobin Agace, 151.—Engages the French under king Philip, at Crecy, and totally defeats them, 163, et seq.—Besieges the town of Calais, 174.—Solicits the friendship of the Flemings, 202.—Obtains possession of Calais, 225.—Orders fix respectable citizens, who, for the security of the other inhabitants, had generously volunteered to submit themselves to his pleasure, to be put to death, 226.—Is dissuaded from his purpose by the queen, 227.—Orders all the old inhabitants of the town to be expelled, 230.—Makes his public entry into Calais, 231.—Enters into a truce with the king of France, 232.—The expence of his establishment at Calais, 233, *note*.—Fights *incognito* near Calais, under the banner of sir Walter Manny, 246.—Takes sir Eustace de Ribeaumont prisoner, 246.—Presents him with a chaplet of pearls in honour of his prowess, 246.—Defeats the Spaniards at sea, 260.—Leads a large army into France



## INDEX.

France during the imprisonment of king John in England, 475.—Besieges Rheims, III. 13.—Takes the town of Tonnerre, 27.—Enters into a composition with the duke of Burgundy to spare his duchy, 31.—Proceeds towards Paris, destroying the country in his march, 31.—Enters into a treaty of peace with the king of France, 43.—Entertains him at Calais, 65.—Returns to England, 66.—Declines embarking in the Croisades, 114.—Receives a defiance from the king of France, 395.—Sends reinforcements into Ponthieu, &c. 396.—Sends to Brabant and Hainault for assistance, 415.—Enters into alliance with the king of Navarre, 422.—Sends the duke of Lancaster with a large body of men to Calais, 452.—Applies to sir Robert de Namur for his assistance, 453.—Raises a large force to make war on the king of France, IV. 70.—Enters into a truce with the Scots, 81.—Makes peace with the Flemings, 143.—Prepares an army to invade France, 151.—Sails from Southampton, but is obliged to return by contrary winds, 201.—Enters into a truce with the French, 271.—Dies at Shene, 282.

*Edward*, the Black Prince of Wales, his valour at the battle of Crécy, II. 167.—Heads an army into Gascony, 282.—Invades the county of Berry, 294.—Takes the town of Romorantin, 298.—Defeats and captures the king

## INDEX.

king of France at the battle of Poitiers, 337.—Embarks for England with his prisoner king John, 368.—Arrives in London, 369.—Accompanies the king of England in an expedition against France, III. 1.—Sets out for Aquitaine, 99.—Makes preparations to assist Don Pedro, king of Castille, 242.—Promises the king of Majorca to assist him against the king of Aragon, 262.—Offends the lord d'Albret, 264.—Sets out on his expedition into Spain, 267.—Takes the town of Salvatierra, 283.—Defeats the army of Don Henry de Trastamare, king of Castille, at the battle of Navareta, 315.—Takes the town of Najara, 316.—Sets out on his return to Aquitaine, displeased with the conduct of Don Pedro, 332.—Arrives with his army at Bourdeaux, 334.—Endeavours to impose the fouage, or a hearth tax, in Aquitaine, 342.—Excites the discontent and opposition of many of the lords of Gascony, 343.—Summoned to appear before the parliament of Paris to answer their complaints, 374.—His resolute answer to the summons, 378.—Prepares to make war on France, 386.—Recalls sir John Chandos from his retirement, and appoints him to the command of a force against the French and Gascon lords, 389.—Receives succours from England under the earls of Cambridge and Pembroke,

## INDEX.

406.—Prepares to oppose the dukes of Anjou and Berry, IV. 77.—Takes the town of Limogues by storm, 96.—On the death of his eldest son Edward gives up the duchy of Aquitaine to the care of his brother the duke of Lancaster, and returns to England, 120.—His death, 277.—Visits the count d'Armagnac at Tarbes, VII. 126.—Is visited by the count de Foix, 127.—Appoints sir Peter Arnaut governor of Lourde, 129.

*Eltham*, sir William, committed to the Tower by the commissioners of accounts, on a charge of having sold Bourbourg and Gravelines to the French, VI. 333.

*English*, the, their manners in the time of Froissart, VII. 324.

*Entença*, the town of, in Galicia, surrenders to the duke of Lancaster, VIII. 180.

*Escandoure*, the castle of, in Hainault, taken and destroyed, I. 194.

*Espaign*, the bourg d', his remarkable strength, VII. 170.

*Estampes*, the count de, sent to endeavour to win over the duke of Brittany to the French interest, IX. 133.

*Eu*, the earl of, taken prisoner by the English under Edward the Third, II. 136.—Beheaded at Paris, 268.

*Es*, the count de. See Artois, Philip d'.

*Evan*,

## INDEX.

*Evan*, of Wales, receives a naval command under the king of France, IV. 165.—Defeats the English in the island of Guernsey, 166.—Sent to Spain to solicit assistance from king Henry, 167.—Insults the earl of Pembroke at St. Andero, 169.—Blockades the town of La Rochelle, 185.—Takes the castle of Soubise, IV. 189.—Besieges Mortmain-sur-mer, 333.—Assassinated by John Lambe, V. 6.

*Evreux*, the county of, subdued for the king of France by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 292.

*Europe*, desolated by the plague, II. 265. *note*.

*Eustace*, de St. Pierre, a citizen of Calais, his patriotic conduct during the siege of that town, II. 224.

## F.

*Famine*, a great one, in France, II. 421.

*Fauecle*, John de, a citizen of Ghent, retires from the town after the murder of the bailiff by the Whitehoods, V. 118.—Dies at Lille, 317.

*Foy*, sir Godemar du, defends the ford of Blanchetaque against Edward the Third and his army, II. 153.—Defeated by the English, 154.—Narrowly escapes being put to death, 177.

## INDEX.

*Felton*, sir William, killed in Spain, III. 292.

*Felton*, sir Thomas, captured by the French under the duke of Anjou, IV. 314.

*Fenestrages*, the lord Broquart de, takes the town of Hans, II. 448.—Defeated and captured by sir Eustace d'Ambreticourt, 452.

*Ferdinand*, king of Portugal, declares war against John king of Castille, V. 324.—Applies to England for assistance, 325.—Takes the field against the Spaniards, VI. 61.—Makes peace with the king of Castille, 63.—Marries his daughter the infanta to him, 67.—His death, 67.—Marries the wife of one of his knights, VII. 372.

*Ferrol*, the town of, taken by the king of Portugal, VIII. 284.

*Fitzwalter*, the lord, dies in Spain, IX. 171.

*Flanders*, the origin of the civil wars in, V. 95.

*Flanders*, the nobility of, make war on the men of Ghent, V. 170.

*Flanders*, the earl of, slain at the battle of Crecy, II. 168.

———, Lewis earl of, betrothed, through the constraint of the Flemings, to Isabella, daughter of the king of England, II. 206.—Escapes into France, 207.—Marries the daughter of the duke of Brabant, 251.—Detains an ambassador from the king of France to the king of Scotland, V. 62.—Supports the cause of pope Urban in his dominions, against the Clementists, 82.—  
Endeavours

## INDEX.

Endeavours to put down the Whitehoods,  
 which had been revived at Ghent, 112.—  
 Collects a force to make war on them, 125.  
 —Makes peace with them, 143.—Comes  
 to Ghent at the entreaty of the inhabitants,  
 156.—Endeavours to prevail on them to  
 lay aside the Whitehoods, 159.—Causes  
 John Pruniaux to be beheaded, 168.—  
 Goes to Bruges at the request of the inha-  
 bitants, 284.—Renews the war with the  
 men of Ghent, 285.—Besieges the town,  
 293.—Defeats the men of Ghent under  
 Rassa de Harzelle, and burns a body of  
 them in the church of Nevele, 303.—Be-  
 sieges again the town of Ghent, VI. 3.—  
 Defeated by the men of Ghent at Bruges,  
 96.—Escapes with great difficulty to Lisle,  
 108.—Applies to the king of France for  
 assistance, 156.—Becomes an object of  
 hatred to the English, 259.—Applies to the  
 duke of Burgundy for assistance to oppose  
 the bishop of Norwich, 282.—Dies at St.  
 Omer, 338.—The ceremony of his funeral,  
 339.  
*Flemings*, the, under Colin Donnequin, defeated  
 at Cassel by Philip of Valois, I. 80.  
 ————— under Jacob von Artaveld, promise to  
 assist Edward the Third against the king of  
 France, I. 163.—Remain firm to their  
 alliance, notwithstanding the sollicitations of  
 the king of France, 180.

## INDEX.

*Flemings*, the, under Robert d'Artois, flee in confusion from before St. Omer, I. 245.

——, the, refuse to disinherit the earl of Flanders, II. 97.—Constrain him to be betrothed to the daughter of the king of England, 205.—Besiege the town of Aire, 215.—Defeated by the English off the island of Bas, IV. 142.—Make peace with the king of England, 143.

*Faix*, Gaston Phœbus, count of, his passion for dogs, I. xv.—Defeats the infamous Jacquerie of Beauvoises, with great slaughter, at Meaux, II. 393.—Visits the prince of Wales at Tarbes, VII. 127.—Remits, at the entreaty of the princess of Wales, sixty thousand francs of the ransom of the count d'Armagnac, 128.—Takes the town of Casseres from the Armagnacs, 142.—His riches and liberality, 159.—Murders sir Peter Arnaut, 177.

*Fois*, the count de, obtains Malvoisin from the king of France as a gift, 180.—Origin of the wars between him and the Armagnacs, 188.—His character and manner of life, 193.—Kills his son and heir Gaston, 206.—His manner of keeping the feast of St. Nicholas, 212.—Rapidly and in a secret manner informed of the battle of Aljubarrota, 292.—Grants permission to the French army to pass through his territories, on their way to Castille, VIII. 196.—Magnificently entertains the duke of Bourbon on his



## INDEX.

- his return towards France, IX. 34.—Prevents the count d'Armagnac from succeeding in his attempt to purchase the forts occupied by the free companies, 45.—Marries his ward, the daughter of the count of Boulogne, to the duke of Berry, 343.—Does homage to the king of France at Toulouse for the county of Foix, X. 58.—His death, 289.—And funeral, 302.
- Foix*, Evan of, burnt to death at a masked dance in Paris, XI. 74.
- Fontenay le Comte*, the castle of, taken by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 198.
- Forgasse*, Laurence, an ambassador from Portugal to England, relates to the duke of Lancaster the events which had happened in Portugal after the departure of the earl of Cambridge, VII. 372.
- St. Forget*, the castle of, taken by sir Walter de Pascal, VII. 308.
- Forsath*, in Gascony, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 62.
- Fouage*, the nature of the tax so called, III. 335.  
*note.*
- France*, the kingdom of, suffers by famine, II. 421.
- Friesland*, invaded by the count of Hainault, XI. 275.
- Froissart*, sir John, memoirs of his life, I. i.—Undertakes, at the entreaty of sir Robert Namur, to write the history of his own times,

## INDEX.

times, ii.—Presents part of his work to queen Philippa of England, iii.—His early attachment to romance, iv.—Appointed secretary to queen Philippa, vii.—His mode of obtaining materials for his work, ix. VIII. 292.—His journey into Scotland, I. x.—Loses his patroness queen Philippa, xii.—His dissipation at Lestines, xiii.—His papers seized by order of the duke of Anjou, xiii.—Visits the count de Foix, xv. VII. 111.—His obituary, I. xxxii.—Essay on his works, xxxv.—Plan of his history, xxxvi.—The time he employed in writing it, xli.—The pains he took in composing it, xlviii.—Remarks on his chronology, lii.—Criticisms on his history, lix.—The charge of partiality made against him examined and refuted, lix.—Cautions to be observed in reading his history, lxix.—His faults and beauties, lxxii.—His character, by Montagne, lxxvi.—Editions of his chronicles, lxxvi.—Dissertation on his poetry, xcvi.—His paradise of love, xcvi.—His horologe amoureuse, ci.—His le dit de la marguerite, cii.—His pastoral, ciii.—His rondeaus, cv.—Specimens of his poetry, cix.—His preface to his chronicles, I. 1.—His reasons for visiting the count de Foix, VII. 111.—Sets out for Bearn, in company with sir Espaign du Lyon, who informs him

## INDEX.

him of many particulars relative to the wars in Guienne, &c. 132.—Arrives at Orthes, 192.—Becomes acquainted with the Bastot de Mauleon, 214.—His description of the manners of the English and Gascons in his time, 324.—Travels to Middleburgh, in Zealand, 362.—Receives information relative to the affairs of Portugal, 363.—Is informed of the particulars of the arrest of sir Oliver de Clifton by the duke of Brittany, VIII. 293.—Returns to France from Bearn, in company with the countess de Boulogne, IX. 346.—Goes to Holland, 350.—Returns to Paris to witness Isabella's public entrance into that city, 351.—Visits England in the reign of Richard the Second, XI. 127.—Presents his book of love poems to the king, 153.

## G.

*Gabelle*, the, a tax upon salt, imposed through France, II. 282.

*Galande*, the castle of, in Brittany, taken by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 222.

*Garliz*, Gomez, beheaded by order of don Pedro, III. 321.

*Gars*, the abbe de, beheaded at Amiens, II. 420.

## INDEX.

*Gascons*, the, oppose the attempt of the prince of Wales to impose a hearth tax on the country, III. 343, 364.

*Gascons*, the, their manners in the time of Froissart, VII. 324.

*Geneva*, the cardinal de, elected pope during the life-time of Urban the Sixth, V. 80.

*Genoa*, its state and condition in the time of Froissart, VII. 328.

*Genoese*, the, raise a large army to invade Barbary, X. 127.—Besiege the town of Africa, 195.—Break up their expedition, 240.

*Gente*, sir Guirebert, a citizen of Ghent, killed for having endeavoured to make peace between the town and the earl of Flanders, VI. 13.

*Genville*, the earl of, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 332.

*St. George*, the chapel of, at Windfor, founded by Edward the Third, II. 46.

*Germany*, the emperor of, attends a great assembly at Rheims, with the king of France, to consult upon means to restore the union of the church, XII. 35.—Deposed, 196.

*Ghent*, the town of, besieged by the earl of Flanders, V. 293. VI. 3.

*Ghent*, the men of, put to death Jacob von Artafeld, II. 101.—Revive the custom of the Whitehoods, and elect John Lyon their captain, V. 104.—Apply to the earl of Flanders

## INDEX.

Flanders to preserve their franchises, 110.—Murder the bailiff of Ghent, 114.—Endeavour to make their peace with the earl, 120.—Enter into alliance with other towns of Flanders, 128.—Choose new leaders, after the death of John Lyon, 131.—Enter into alliance with the town of Ypres, 133.—Besiege Oudenarde, 134.—March to attack the earl of Flanders, in Dendremonde, 136.—Make peace with the earl, 143.—Take the town of Oudenarde, 162.—Surrender it to the earl's forces, 167.—Destroy the houses of the nobility, 169.—Put to death John Roule, one of their commanders, 290.—Take several towns in Flanders, 297.—Defeated with great slaughter at Neville, where several hundreds of them are burnt in a church, 303.—Besiege Courtray, 309.—Greatly distressed for provisions, but relieved by the men of Liege, VI. 70.—Defeat the earl of Flanders at Bruges, 96.—Take the town of Bruges and several others, 98 et seq.—Besiege Oudenarde, 117.—Endeavour to form an alliance with England, 136.—Defeated at the pass of Commines, under Peter du Bois, 189.—Defeated, under Philip von Artaveld, at the battle of Rosebecque, 226.—Endeavour to make peace with the earl, 245.—Take the town of Ardembourg, 257.—Assist the English at the siege of Ypres, 288.—Defeat a party of the French at Ardem.

## INDEX.

**Ardebourg**, 386.—Take Damme, VII. 32.—Make peace with the duke of Burgundy, the heir of Flanders, 96.

**Glocester**, the duke of, [for the preceding particulars of this prince see Buckingham, the earl of,] his creation, VIII. 118.—Confederates with the duke of York and others against Richard the Second and his council, 307.—Defeats the king's forces, under the duke of Ireland, near Oxford, 355.—Thwarts the king in his intentions of making peace with the king of France, X. 279.—Plots the destruction of the king, 344.—Instigates the Londoners to petition for a repeal of the war taxes, 345.—Arrested by order of the king, 364.—Put to death at Calais, XII. 27.

**Gomegines**, the lord of, defeated and taken prisoner on his way to join the king of England before Rheims, III. 21.

**Goodman**, James, chosen leader of the infamous Jacquerie of Beauvoisis, II. 389.

**Goy la Foret**, the castle of, taken by sir Walter Manny, II. 7.—Surrenders to sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 222.

**Gramat**, the town of, taken by sir John Chandos, III. 441.

**Grammont**, the town of, in Flanders, taken by the lord d'Anghein, VI. 3.

**Grave**, the town of, besieged by the Brabanters, IX. 153.

*Grave-*

## INDEX.

- avelines*, the town of, taken by the bishop of  
Norwich, VI. 271.
- avelle*, the lord of, beheaded at Rouen, II. 290.
- egory the Eleventh*, pope, elected at Avig-  
non, IV. 115.—Endeavours to make peace  
between the kings of France and England,  
247.—Removes to Rome, 281.—His death,  
360.
- iffith*, a Welshman, commands a troop of the  
free companies, and pillages several places  
in France, II. 381.
- is*, James le, killed in a duel at Paris by sir John  
de Carogne, VIII. 126.
- eldres*, the duke of, promises to assist the king  
of England against France, III. 418.—En-  
ters into an alliance with England, VIII.  
262. IX. 78.—Sends an insulting defiance  
to the king of France, VIII. 263.—En-  
deavours to obtain possession of three castles  
belonging to his duchy, which had been  
sold to the duke of Brabant, IX. 77.—  
Obtains possession of Grave, 153.—Defeats  
the Brabanters at the bridge of Ravestein,  
212.—Makes peace with the king of France  
and the dukes of Brabant, 303.—Taken  
prisoner in Prussia, 325.—Delivered by the  
Teutonic knights, 326.—Returns to Prussia  
to keep his faith with his capturer, and ob-  
tains his liberty, 327.
- errande*, the town of, taken by the forces of the  
lord Charles of Blois, I. 312.

*Guesclin,*



## INDEX.

*Guesclin*, sir Bertrand du, chosen commander of the French forces in Normandy, III. 148.—Defeats the forces of the king of Navarre at the battle of Cocherel, 155.—Obtains possession of the castle of Rouleboise, 162.—Goes to the assistance of the lord Charles of Blois, 173.—Taken prisoner at the battle of Auray, 193.—Ransomed, 216.—Leads an army into Spain, 219.—Appointed constable of Castille, 224.—Goes to the assistance of Henry of Castille against don Pedro and the prince of Wales, 273.—Captured at the battle of Navarete, 313.—Obtains his ransom, 338.—Joins king Henry before Toledo, 350.—Again appointed constable of Spain, 360.—Joins the duke of Anjou in an expedition against the prince of Wales, IV. 73.—Invades the viscounty of Limoges, 101.—Takes the town of Yrier, 102.—Appointed constable of France, 107.—Defeats the forces of sir Robert Knolles at Pont-valin, 113.—Takes the castle of Monmorillon and several other places in Poitou, 173 et seq.—Heads an army against Brittany, 220.—Takes the town of Rennes and several others, 221 et seq.—Sent with a large army against the king of Navarre, 291.—Makes war on Brittany, V. 75.—Dies at Auvergne, 175.—The etymology of his name, VIII. 297.—See also 300, *note*.

*Guesclin,*

## INDEX.

*Guesclin*, sir Oliver du, made prisoner by the gar-  
rison of Cherbourg, IV. 294. V. 27.

*Guignes*, the town of, taken by the English, II.  
271.

*Guincamp*, the town of, taken by sir Bertrand du  
Guesclin, IV. 222.

*Guistelles*, the lord de, appeases an insurrection  
at Bruges against the French troops, VIII.  
114.

## H.

*Hainault*, the country of, invaded by the French,  
I. 166, 188.—In danger of being pillaged  
by the Bretons belonging to the army of  
Charles the Sixth, of France, VI. 236.

*Hainault*, sir John of, offers his assistance to  
Isabella, queen of Edward the Second, I.  
20.—Escorts her to England, 25.—Assists  
her at the siege of Bristol, 28.—Assists the  
king of England in an expedition against  
the Scots, 39.—His territories invaded by  
the king of France, 167.—Appointed go-  
vernor of Hainault during the absence of  
the earl in England, 178.—Quits the al-  
legiance of England for that of France, II.  
105.

*Hainault*, William earl of, father of Philippa, queen  
of England, his death, I. 120.

*Hainault*,

## INDEX.

*Hainault*, William earl of, son of the above, sends his defiance to the king of France, I. 173.—Takes the town of Auberton, &c. 177.—Visits England, 178.—Germany, 198.—Returns to Hainault, 200.—Assembles a large army to raise the siege of Thim l'Eveque, 201.—Burns the town of Seclin, &c. 217.—Takes the town of St. Amand, 236.—Utrecht, II. 103.—Slain in Friesland, 104.

*Hainault*, the count of, raises an army to invade Friesland, XI. 262.—Over-runs the country, and disbands his forces, 279.

*Harcourt*, the earl of, beheaded at Rouen, II. 290.

*Harcourt*, the young earl of, makes peace with the duke of Normandy, II. 447.

*Harcourt*, sir Godfrey de, banished from France, II. 94.—Accompanies the king of England in an expedition into Normandy, 125.—Created one of the marshals of his army, 126.—Defeats a body of men from Amiens on their march to join the king of France, 145.—Carries on the war in Normandy for the king of England, 361.—Defeated and slain at the battle of Coutantin, 365.

*Harcourt*, sir John, returns to France from England, where he had been as hostage for king John, III. 382.

*Harlestone*, sir William, appointed governor of Cherbourg, IV. 297.—Defeats a body of French

## INDEX.

- French troops under sir William de Bourdes,  
whom he captures, 301.
- Haïpres*, the town of, burnt by the French, I.  
170.
- Harfley*, William de, a physician of France,  
cures king Charles the Sixth of France of  
his first derangement, XI. 61.—Dies at  
Laon, 62.
- Harzelle*, Rasse de, chosen one of the commanders  
of the Whitehoods of Ghent, V. 131.—  
Takes several towns in Flanders, 296 et  
seq.—Killed in an engagement with the earl  
of Flanders, 303.
- Harzelles*, the lord de, killed at Ghent, VI. 365.
- Hawokwood*, sir John, an English commander, en-  
ters into the service of Urban the Sixth in  
Italy, V. 93.
- Helly*, sir James de, taken prisoner by the Turks  
at the battle of Nicopoli, XI. 300.—Sent  
to France with information of the defeat of  
the army of John of Burgundy, 308.—  
Obtains his liberty, 323.—Returns to  
France, 337.
- Hennebon*, the town of, in Brittany, taken by the  
earl of Montford, as duke of Brittany, I.  
261.—Besieged by the lord Charles of  
Blois, 300. II. 8.—Taken by sir Bertrand  
du Guesclin, IV. 224.
- Henry the Fourth*, of England, crowned during  
the life-time of Richard the Second, XII.  
162.

*Henry*

## INDEX.

*Henry de Trastamare*, enters Castille with a large army to dethrone his brother don Pedro, III. 219.—Acknowledged and crowned king of Castille by the Spaniards, 222.—Takes measures to oppose don Pedro and the prince of Wales, 243.—Defeated at the battle of Navarete, 315.—Escapes to Arragon, 325.—Makes war on the prince of Wales in Aquitaine, 328.—Makes war on don Pedro, assisted by the king of Arragon, 346.—Defeats don Pedro near Montiel, 354.—Puts him to death, 359.—Obtains the submission of Castille, 360.—Enters into alliance with the king of France, IV. 148.—Makes war on the king of Navarre, 293.—Concludes a peace with him, V. 48.—His death, 50.

*Henry*, the infant of Spain, marries the daughter of the duke of Lancaster, IX. 303.—Crowned king of Castille, 256.

*Herielle*, the castle of, taken by the king of Navarre, II. 411.

*Holland*, sir John, kills lord Ralph Stafford, VII. 61.

*Hertager*, sent to England for king John of France, III. 66.

*Huet*, sir Walter, killed in a skirmish in Brittany, IV. 242.

*Hungary*, the king of, applies to the court of France, for assistance against the sultan Bajazet, XI. 204.—Crosses the Danube with a large

## INDEX.

a large army, accompanied by John of Burgundy and his forces, 232.—Takes the town of Comeſte by ſtorm, 234.—Beſieges Nicopoli, 237.—His army defeated be  
6 Bajazet, 297.

*Huntingdon*, the earl of, proclaims a tournament at Oxford with the view of murdering king Henry, XII. 180.—Slain at Cirenceſter, 185.

## L.

*St. Iago de Compoſtella*, the town of, in Galicia, taken by the duke of Lancaſter, VIII.  
24.

*Innocent the Sixth*, pope, elected at Avignon, II. 273.—Endeavours to make peace between the kings of France and England, and the kings of France and Navarre, 302.—Orders a croiſade to be preached againſt the free companies, III. 88.—His death, 97.

*Insurrection* in Paris againſt Charles the Sixth, VI. 14.

———— at Rouen, VI. 17.

————, a general, in England, in favour of the earl of Derby againſt Richard the Second, XII. 109.

## INDEX.

*Interview* between the king of Portugal and the duke of Lancaster, VIII. 70.

———— between the kings of France and England at Ardres, XI. 285.

*Ireland*, the earl of Oxford created duke of, VIII. 118.—Incurs the hatred of the people of England, 307.—Obtains a divorce from his wife, the lady Philippa, 311.—Endeavours to counteract the measures of the commissioners of accounts and the new council of state, 334.—Marches from Bristol towards London as lieutenant for the king, 346.—Defeated near Oxford by the Londoners, under the duke of Gloucester, 355.—Flies the kingdom, 356.—Invited to France, IX. 143.—Ordered thence, X. 10.

*Irish*, their manners and mode of warfare, XI. 115.

*Isabella*, queen of Edward the Second, declared ineligible to the crown of France, I. 9.—Incurs the hatred of sir Hugh Spencer, 11.—Lays her grievances before her brother, Charles the Fourth of France, and solicits his advice and assistance, 13.—Commanded to quit France, 18.—Lands in England with a considerable force, and is joined by the English barons, 26.—Takes her husband prisoner at Bristol, 30.—Confines him in Berkeley castle, 31.—Enters London amidst great rejoicings, 32.—Obtains the coronation



## INDEX.

coronation of her son Edward the Third, 35.—Suspected of being pregnant by sir Roger Mortimer, 83.—Committed to prison by order of the council, 84.—Dies in London, III. 101.

*Isabella*, daughter of Edward the Third of England, betrothed to Lewis earl of Flanders, II. 206.

*Isabella*, the lady, of Bavaria, married to Charles the Sixth of France, VII. 34.—Makes her public entry into Paris, IX. 352.

*Isabella*, daughter of Charles the Sixth, betrothed to Richard the Second of England, XI. 224.—Delivered to him by king Charles at Ardres, 288.—Married to him at Calais, 289.

## J.

*Jacquerie*, the rise of an infamous body of men in Beauvoisis under this appellation, II. 387.—Their atrocities, 388.—A large number of them destroyed by the king of Navarre, 390.—Thousands of them slain at Meux by the earl of Foix and the captal of Buch, 392.

*James*, king of Cyprus, interests himself to obtain the liberation of John of Burgundy and his companions, who were prisoners in Turkey, XI. 367.

## INDEX.

*St. Jean d'Angely*, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 182.—Surrenders to the French, 270.—IV. 190.

*Jews*, the, persecuted through Europe, II 264.

*John*, son of Philip of Valois, crowned king of France, II. 267.—Makes his public entry into Paris, 268.—Prevents a combat between the duke of Lancaster and the duke of Brunswick, 272.—Takes possession of the lands of the king of Navarre in Normandy, 279.—Coins florins of gold, which were called *lamb florins*, 280.—Marches an army against the king of England, 284.—Gives the duchy of Normandy to his eldest son, the dauphin of Vienne, 285.—Arrests the king of Navarre, 289.—Marches an army against the duke of Lancaster, 292.—Collects an army to oppose the prince of Wales, 293.—Defeated and taken prisoner at the battle of Poitiers, 337.—Surrenders to the prince of Wales, 341.—Embarked for England, 368.—Rides through London, 369.—Confined in Windsor castle, 370.—Enters into a treaty with the king of England and the prince of Wales, 458.—The French council refuse to ratify it, 459.—Sent to the Tower of London, 475.—Obtains his liberty, and returns to France, III. 65.—Magnificently entertained at Paris, 79.—Quarrels with the king of Navarre, 95.—Visits the pope  
at

## INDEX.

at Avignon, 96.—Puts on the cross, 104.—Returns to England, 119.—His death, 126.—Buried at St. Denis, 136.—See also 137, *note*.

*John*, don, son of Henry de Trastamare, crowned king of Castille, V. 50.—Makes war on Portugal, 324.—Takes the field against the king of Portugal and the earl of Cambridge, VI. 61.—Makes peace with the king of Portugal, 63.—Marries his daughter, 67.—Sends his defiance to the new king of Portugal, and raises an army to make war on him, VII. 121, 385.—Besieges Lisbon, 122, 386.—Applies to the king of France for assistance, 124.—Abandons the siege of Lisbon, 251.—Takes the field against the king of Portugal, 264.—Defeated, with great slaughter, at the battle of Aljubarota, 285, 404.—Enters into a truce with the king of Portugal, 291.—Applies to France for assistance against the king of Portugal and the duke of Lancaster, VIII. 48.—Grants permission to the duke of Lancaster to send his men into Castille to recruit their health, IX. 15.—Regains possession of Galicia after the departure of the duke of Lancaster, 138.—Sends ambassadors to the duke of Lancaster, to demand his daughter for the infant of Spain, 177.—Makes peace with the duke, 331.—Marries his son to the lady

## INDEX.

- Catherine of Lancaster, 338.—His death, X. 256.
- John*, don, grand master of Avis, declared king of Portugal, VI. 67. VII. 117, 380.—Crowned, 119, 391.—Sends ambassadors to England to solicit the alliance of Richard the Second, 123, 237.—Raises an army to make war on the king of Castille, 260.—Defeats him at the battle of Aljubarota, 285, 404.—Enters into a truce with him, 291.—Sends ambassadors to solicit the assistance of the duke of Lancaster, 366.—Receives favourable answers, VIII. 3.—Writes friendly letters to the duke of Lancaster on his arrival in Galicia, 48.—Has an interview with him, 70.—Marries the lady Philippa, daughter of the duke of Lancaster, 178.—Takes the field against the king of Castille, 268.—Burns the town of Santaren, 280.—Takes Ferrol, 284.—Forms a junction with the duke of Lancaster at Orense, 370.—Dismisses his army, IX. 19.
- John of Gaunt*, earl of Richmond, created duke of Lancaster, III. 100.
- John*, friar, de la Rochetaillade, delivers an apologue before the cardinals concerning the papacy, VII. 353.
- Joigny*, the earl of, captured by the prince of Wales, II. 304.—Taken prisoner at the battle of Auray, III. 192.

*Joigny.*

## INDEX.

*Joigny*, the lord Raoul de, taken prisoner by the prince of Wales, II. 304.

*Joinville*, the fort of, taken by the free-booting companies, III. 73.

*Jouel*, sir John, joins the king of Navarre, III. 133.—Slain at the battle of Cocherel in Normandy, 158.

*Jony*, the count de, burnt to death at a masked dance at Paris, XI. 72.

*Jugon*, the town of, taken by the lord Charles of Blois through treachery, II. 15.—Retaken by the lord John de Montford, III. 202.—Surrenders to sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 222.

*St. Julien*, Louis de, takes the town of Chatelheraut, IV. 57.

*Juliers*, William count de, made duke of Gueldres, IX. 59.

*Juliers*, the duke of, promises assistance to the king of England against France, III. 418.—Defeats the duke of Brabant with great slaughter, IX. 58.—Makes his peace with the emperor, 73.—Makes his submission to the king of France, 291.—Makes peace between the duke of Gueldres and the king of France, 303.

## INDEX.

### K.

*Kent*, the earl of, beheaded through the jealousy of sir Robert Mortimer, I. 83.

*Knights Bachelors*, the signification of their title, I. 240. *note*.

*Knights Bannerets*, an account of their title and rank, I. 68. *note*.

*Knights of the Garter*, the order instituted at Windsor by Edward the Third, II. 45.—The names of the first knights, 46, *note*.

*Knights of the Hare*, the origin of their title, I. 160.

*Knights of the Star*, the first of that order, II. 270.

*Knolles*, sir Robert, commands a troop of the free companies in Normandy, II. 382.—Makes an incursion into Berry and Auvergne, 464.—Goes to the assistance of the prince of Wales, III. 431.—Appointed captain of the prince of Wales's companies, 432.—Summoned to England by king Edward, IV. 66.—Leads an army into Picardy, 82.—Enters into a composition to save the country from being pillaged, 85.—Defeated at Pont Valin by sir Bertrand du

## INDEX.

du Guesclin, 113.—Retreats into Brittany, 114.—Some account of his life, 138, *note*.—Incurs the displeasure of the king of England, 139.—Reinstated in his favour 140.—Appointed governor of Brittany, 222.—Captures the lord de Mauvoisin, V. 222.

## L.

*Lac Le*, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 62.

*Lamb florins*, first coined, II. 280.

*Lambe*, John, assassinate Evan of Wales at Mortmain-sur-mer, V. 6.

*Lancaster*, Thomas, earl of, beheaded through the enmity of sir Hugh Spencer, I. 11.

*Lancaster*, Henry, earl of, brother of the former, joins the party of queen Isabella against Edward the Second and the Spencers, I. 26.

*Lancaster*, the duke of, son of earl Henry, lands in Coutantin to assist Philip of Navarre against the king of France, II. 291.—Takes the town of Verneuil, 292.—Besieges Rennes, 374.—Leads a large army into Picardy, 470.—Persuades the king of England to make peace with the duke of Normandy, III. 43.—Dies of the plague, 94.

*Lancaster*,



## INDEX.

*Lancaster*, John of Gaunt, duke of, his creation, III. 100.—Embarks with a large army for Aquitaine, 261.—Leads a large army into France, 452.—Returns to England, IV. 37.—Embarks with a large force for Aquitaine, 73.—Appointed governor of Aquitaine, 120.—Takes Mont Paon, 128.—Marries the lady Constance, daughter of don Pedro of Castille, 147.—Returns to England, 149.—Leads an army through France to Bourdeaux, 230, et seq.—Enters into a truce with the French, and returns to England, 254.—Made regent of England, during the minority of Richard the Second, 283.—Heads an army into Brittany, 295.—Besieges St. Malo, 295, 382. Abandons the siege, V. 24.—Informed of the death of don Henry, king of Castille, 57.—Sent to treat with the Scots, 329.—Makes a truce with them, 366.—Refused admission into Berwick Castle, 367.—Returns to Scotland with the earl of Douglas, 369.—Sent for by king Richard, 373.—Offended with the earl of Northumberland, 377.—Appeased by the king, 379.—Obtains an army to make war on Castille, VIII. 2.—Embarks for Portugal, 5.—Forces the French to raise the blockade of Brest, 11.—Arrives at Corunna, 15.—Takes the town of St. Iago de Compostella and several others in Galicia, 24, et seq.—Makes war on Arragon, 131.—Marries his daughter,

## INDEX.

daughter, the lady Philippa, to the king of Portugal, 177.—Takes the towns of Entença, &c. 188, et seq.—Suffers greatly from the heat of the climate, 368.—Forms a junction with the king of Portugal, 370.—Passes the Duero, 373.—Dispirited by the sickness of himself and army, IX. 5.—Disbands his men, 10.—Obtains permission from the king of Castille for them to recruit their health in his towns, 15.—Quits Galicia and returns to Bayonne, 40, 141.—Applies to England for fresh assistance, 142.—Betroths his daughter Catharine to the infanta of Spain, 303.—Makes peace with the king of Castille, 331.—Marries his daughter to the infanta, 338.—Receives the duchy of Aquitaine as a gift from king Richard and his council, XI. 119.—Embarks for Aquitaine, 123.—Ordered to return in consequence of the remonstrances of the towns of Aquitaine against the king's gift, 168.—Marries his concubine, 225.—Offended with king Richard for the murder of the duke of Gloucester, XII. 31.—Makes peace with him, 33.—His death, 83.

*Lancaster*, the duchess of, takes her daughter to Castille, and marries her to the infanta, IX. 338.—Finds the bones of her father, don Pedro, and has them buried at Seville, 339.

*Langon,*

## INDEX.

*Langon*, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 62.—Surrenders to the duke of Anjou, IV. 257.

*Langurant*, the lord de, captured by the duke of Anjou, IV. 314.—Turns to the French interest, 318.—Slain near Cadillac, V. 54.

*Launony*, John de, one of the commanders of the men of Ghent, slain at the church of Nevele, V. 304.

*Lauton*, sir John, slain before La Rochelle, IV. 161.

*Le Clerc*, Arnold, one of the commanders of the men of Ghent, defeats a party of the Flemish nobility at Oudenarde, V. 312.—Defeated and slain at Bercham, 314.

*Leon*, king of Armenia, arrives in France, after losing his dominions, VII. 327.—Relieved by the king of France, 347.—His death, 348, *note*.—Endeavours to negotiate a peace between the kings of France and England, VIII. 105.

*Leon*, sir Hervé de, captured before Vannes, II. 36.—Liberated by king Edward, 48.—Dies at Paris, 50.

*Letter*, from Edward the Black Prince to the bishop of Worcester, after the battle of Poitiers, II. 353, *note*.

*Letter*, sent by the king of England to Aquitaine, IV. 54.

*Lewis,*

## INDEX.

*Lewis*, the lord, of Spain, raises the siege of Hennebon, I. 310.—Takes the town of Denant, &c. 312.—Defeated at Quimperle by sir Walter Manny, II. 2.—Engages lord Robert d'Artois at sea, 23.

*Libourne*, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 66.

*Liege*, the bishop of, endeavours to make peace between the earl of Flanders and the bishop of Norwich, VI. 292.

*Lieux*, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 62.

*Lignac*, sir Helion de, sent to treat with the duke of Lancaster for the marriage of his daughter to the duke of Berry, IX. 159.

*Lignac*, sir William de, seneschal of Saintonge, takes the castle of Aigle, VII. 7.—Accompanies the duke of Bourbon to the assistance of the king of Castille, 155.—Arrives at Burgos, 214.

*Limoges*, the town of, surrenders to the duke of Berry, IV. 93.—Taken by storm by the prince of Wales, 103.

*Linde*, the town of, besieged by the duke of Anjou, IV. 78.—Delivered by the capital of Buch, 79.

*Linieres*, sir Maubrun de, dies at Noya, IX. 20.

*Lionel*, earl of Ulster, created duke of Clarence, III. 100.—Marries the daughter of the lord Galeas of Milan, 339.—His death, 361.

*Lisbon*,

## INDEX.

*Lisbon*, the city of, besieged by the king of Castille,  
VII. 122, 386.

*Lisle*, the earl of, makes war in Gascony for the  
king of France, I. 219.—Besieges Aube-  
roche, II. 67.—Taken prisoner by the earl  
of Derby, 72.

*St. Lo*, the town of, taken by the English under  
king Edward, II. 133.

*London*, the bishop of, appointed to accompany the  
duke of Lancaster in an expedition against  
Spain, VI. 264.

*Londoners*, the, dissatisfied with king Richard and  
his council, apply to the duke of Gloucester  
to take upon him the government of the  
realm, VIII. 313.—Wait upon the king  
at Windsor to lay their grievances before  
him, and to demand redress, 316.—Pre-  
vail upon the king to fix a day to examine  
into the conduct of those who had had the  
management of the finances, 319.—Defeat  
the duke of Ireland and the king's forces,  
near Oxford, 352.—Wait upon the king, at  
the instigation of the duke of Gloucester, to  
demand the repeal of the taxes which had  
been imposed to carry on the war with  
France, XI. 346.—Take part with the earl  
of Derby in his quarrel with the earl mar-  
shal, XII. 50.—Rise in favour of the earl of  
Derby against Richard the Second, 112.—  
Send the archbishop of Canterbury to France  
to bring back the earl of Derby, 115.

*Longueval,*

## INDEX

*Langueval*, sir William de, takes the castle of Mont Paon, IV. 122.—Surrenders it to the duke of Lancaster, 128.

*Lorraine*, the duke of, slain at the battle of Crecy, II. 168.

*Louis*, sir Lancelot de, mortally wounded at Cherbourg, V. 73.

*Louis*, de Valois, marries, by procurator, Margaret of Hungary, VII. 23.

*Lourde*, the castle of, besieged by the duke of Anjou, VII. 58.

———, the garrison of, take several places in France, VII. 135, et seq.

*Louvaine*, sir Nicholas, governor of Abbville, taken prisoner by sir Hugh de Chatillon, III. 379.

*Louvier*, the town of, taken by the English under Edward the Third, II. 142.

*Luna*, the cardinal de, elected pope at Avignon, under the title of Benedict, XI. 112.

*Lusignan*, the town of, in Poitou, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 181.—Surrenders to sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 214.

*Lusignan*, king of Cyprus, arrives at Avignon, III. 103.—Visits Germany to exhort the emperor to join the crusade against the Saracens, 106.—Visits the king of Navarre, 110.—Endeavours to prevail on the king of England to put on the cross, 114.—Goes to Aquitaine to solicit the prince of

## INDEX.

- of Wales to do the same, 117.—Returns to Paris, 135.—Put to death, VII. 329.
- Lussac*, the town and castle of, taken by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 173.
- Luxembourg*, sir Peter de, his body said to shew miraculous powers, IX. 86.
- Luzumont*, the castle of, in Brittany, taken by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 222.
- Lyon*, John, a citizen of Ghent, revives the custom of the Whitehoods, V. 104.—Instigates the men of Ghent to demand of the earl of Flanders the preservation of their franchises, 110.—Burns and pillages the castle of Andreghein, belonging to the earl, 119.—Dies at Ardembourg, 130.
- Lyon*, sir Espaing du, accompanies Froissart to Bearn, and relates to him many particulars relative to the wars in Guienne, &c. VII. 133.

## M.

- St. Mahé*, the town of, in Brittany, surrenders to sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 222.
- Maillart*, John, a citizen of Paris, prevents the city being betrayed by the provost of merchants, II. 403.

*Majorca*,



## INDEX.

*Majorca*, James, king of, applies to the prince of Wales for his assistance against the king of Arragon, III. 261.—Accompanies the prince and don Pedro into Spain, 276.—Taken prisoner at Valedolid, by king Henry of Castille, 346.—Ransomed by his wife, the queen of Naples, IV. 143.—Makes war on the king of Arragon, 144.—Dies at Val di Soria, 145.

*St. Maixant*, the town of, in Poitou, taken by the duke of Berry, IV. 194.

*Maleval*, sir Louis de, turns to the French interest, IV. 53.

*St. Malo*, the town of, surrenders to sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 222.—Besieged by the duke of Lancaster, V. 2.

*Malvoison*, the castle of, taken by the duke of Anjou, VII. 157.

*Mandarant*, the castle of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 62.

*Manners* of the English and Gascons in the time of Froissart, VII. 324.

*Manny*, sir Giles, killed before Cambray, I. 169.

*Manny*, sir Walter, makes an incursion into France, I. 137.—Sent with an English force into Brittany, to the assistance of the countess of Montford, 299.—Arrives at Hennebion, 307.—Retakes the castle of Conquet, 312.—Defeats the lord Lewis of Spain, at Quemperlé, II. 2.—Takes the castle of

## INDEX.

*Maudurant*, Geronnet de, captured by sir John de Bonnelance, IX. 101.—Taken to Montferrante, 102 —Ransomed, 107. —Gains possession of the town of Montferrante for Peter le Bearnois, 118.

*Mauléon*, le Bastot de, relates his adventures to Froissart, at Orthes, VII. 214.

*Mauny*, sir Olivier de, makes the king of Navarre prisoner, III. 281.

*St. Maur*, the abbey of, on the Loire, taken by the English under the earl of Pembroke, IV. 31.

*Mawcoisin*, lord de, captured by sir Robert Knolles, V. 222.

*Maxwell*, sir John, captures sir Ralph Percy at the battle of Otterbourn, IX. 259

*St. Mecaire*, the town of, surrenders to the duke of Anjou, IV. 325.

*Melrose*, the abbey of, destroyed by Richard the Second, VII. 65.

*Melval*, lord Louis de, taken prisoner at the battle of Poitiers, II. 332.

*Melun*, the town of, on the Seine, besieged by the duke of Normandy, II. 444.

*Menstreworth*, sir John, with his followers, quits the army of sir Robert Knolles, IV. 111.  
—Executed in London, 139.

*Mercier*, sir John le, one of the ministers of Charles the Sixth of France, committed to prison during the regency of the duke of Burgundy,

## INDEX.

- Burgundy, XI. 42.—His property confiscated, 50.—Released from prison, 190.
- Mesclin*, the little, captain of some free companies, put to death at Luxembourg, IX. 63.
- Meulon*, the town of, taken by the French under the lord de Boucicaut, III. 131.
- Milhaud*, the castle of, in Rouerge, taken by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 136.
- Mirabeau*, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 181.
- Miraculous appearances*, said to have been seen by the Saracens during the siege of Africa, X. 206.
- Miramont*, the castle of, taken by the duke of Normandy, II. 107.
- Moissac*, the town of, in Quercy, taken by the English under sir John Chandos, III. 437.—Surrenders to the duke of Anjou, IV. 75.
- Moncontour*, the castle of, taken by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 175.
- Monmorillon*, the castle of, in Poitou, taken by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 173.
- Monsac*, the town of, taken by the duke of Anjou, IV. 257.
- Monstier*, lord Peter de, appointed chief of the crusade against the free companies in France, III. 89.

## INDEX.

*Montacute*, fir William, created earl of Salisbury,  
I. 104. ♣

*Montagne*, his character of Froissart, I. lxxvi.

*Montagu*, lord William de, slain at the battle of  
Poitiers, II. 332.

*Montaubon*, battle of, between fir Guy d'Alai and  
the free companies, III. 258.

*Montbeliard*, the earl of, invades the duchy of  
Burgundy, III. 169.

*Montcontour*, the castle of, in Poitou, taken by  
the English under lord Thomas Percy, IV.  
133.

*Montebourg*, the town of, burnt and pillaged by  
the English under king Edward the Third,  
II. 128.

*Montendre*, the lord of, captured at the battle of  
Poitiers, II. 336.

*Montferrant*, the town of, taken by stratagem  
by Perrot le Bernois, IX. 118.

*Montferrant*, the marquis de, leads the free  
companies into Lombardy, III. 90.— Con-  
quers several places from the lord of Mi-  
lan, 91.

*Montfort*, the earl of, takes measures to secure  
to himself the duchy of Brittany, after the  
death of his brother, I. 253 — takes the  
town of Brest and several others, 257, et  
seq.—Does homage to the king of Eng-  
land for the duchy of Brittany, 265.—  
Summoned before the parliament of Paris,  
at

## INDEX.

at the suit of the lord Charles of Blois, 266.—Besieges the castle of Nantes, 273.—Captured by the French, 276.—Dies in the Louvre at Paris, 276.—[See this account corrected, 276, *note*.]

*Montfort*, the lord John de, defeats the forces of the lord Charles of Blois, at the battle of Auray, III. 194.—His behaviour on seeing the body of his adversary, who had been slain in the battle, 197.—Takes Auray and other places, 202, *et seq*.—Makes peace with the king of France, and is acknowledged duke of Brittany, 207.—Marries the daughter of the princess of Wales, 208.—Applies to England for assistance against the king of France, IV. 208.—Retakes several places in Brittany, 267.—Besieges Quimperlé, 270.—Disbands his army, and retires to England, 272.—Returns to Brittany, V. 148.—Solicits king Richard for succours, 178.—Excuses himself to the earl of Buckingham, who had come to his assistance, for not meeting him on his march, 232.—Makes peace with the king of France, 274.—Arrests sir Oliver de Clifton in the castle of Ermine, and causes the expedition against England to be given up, VIII. 242.—Liberates sir Oliver, 257.—Required by the king of France to explain his conduct towards the constable, and to deliver up to him the castle he had

## INDEX.

taken from him as his ransom, 302.—His answer, 304.—Disregards the overtures made by the duke of Berry to gain him over to the French interest, IX. 130.—Enters into an alliance with England, 146.—With Navarre, 150.—Restores the castles of sir Oliver de Clifton, 169.—Goes to Paris at the entreaty of the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, 185.—Makes his peace with the king of France, 190.—Returns to Brittany, 222.—Meets the king of France at Tours to make an amicable settlement of the differences existing between them, X. 320.—Agrees to marry his son to the daughter of the king of France and his daughter to John of Brittany, 333.—Grants an asylum to sir Peter de Craon after his attempt to murder sir Oliver de Clifton, 379.—Involves himself in a war with the king of France, XI. 3.—Wages a destructive war against sir Oliver de Clifton, 88.—Makes peace with him, 200.—Grants assistance to the earl of Derby to embark for England, XII. 124.—His death, 187.

*Montfort*, the countess de, carries on the war against the lord Charles of Blois after the capture of her husband, I. 277.—Solicits assistance from England, 299.—Besieged by the lord Charles of Blois in Hennibon, 300.—Displays great courage in the defence of the town, 301.—Enters into a truce with the lord Charles of Blois, and goes to England,

## INDEX.

- land, II. 16.—Returns to Brittany with reinforcements, under sir Robert d'Artois, 25.—Her forces take the lord Charles of Blois prisoner at La Roche d'Errien, 213.
- Montgis*, the castle of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 62.
- Montlieu*, the castle of, taken by the duke of Bourbon, VII. 8.
- Montmorency*, sir Charles de, taken prisoner at Pont a Trefin, I. 242.
- Mont-paon*, the castle of, surrenders to the French under sir William de Longueval, IV. 122.—Retaken by the duke of Lancaster, 128.
- Montpellier*, the towns and lordships of, belonging to the king of Navarre, seized by the French, IV. 369.
- Montpezat*, the village of, taken by the duke of Anjou, IV. 75.
- Montpin*, the fort of, taken by sir Thomas Trivet, V. 35.
- Montpouillant*, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 89.
- Montreuil Bonin*, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 183.
- Montsegar*, the village of, surrenders to the earl of Derby, II. 80.—Taken by the duke of Anjou, IV. 323.
- Moray*, Randolph, earl of, his death, I. 74.
- Moray*, the earl of, taken prisoner by the English before Newcastle upon Tyne, I. 284.—Exchanged for the earl of Salisbury, 297.

*Morbequ-*

## INDEX.

*Morbeque*, Denys de, captures king John at the battle of Poitiers, II. 337.

*Moron*, Castel, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 91.

*Mortain*, the town of, in Normandy, taken by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 292.

*Mortain sur Mer*, the town of, in Poitou, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 181.—Besieged by Evan of Wales, IV. 333.—The siege raised by the English, V. 17.

*Mortimer*, the castle of, surrenders to sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 215.

*Mortimer*, sir Roger, ignominiously put to death, I. 83.

*Mouton*, a French coin so called, the origin of its appellation, II. 360, *note*.

*Mucident*, the lord of, killed before Chargny in Dormois, III. 16.

*Mucident*, the lord of, taken prisoner by the duke of Anjou, IV. 314.—Turns to the French interest, 318.—Returns to the English party, V. 50.

*Muros*, the town of, in Galicia, surrenders to the duke of Lancaster, VIII. 172.

*Murray*, the earl of, captured by the English at the battle of Nevil's Cross, II. 196.

*Musgrave*, sir Thomas, defeated and captured by the Scots at Melrose, IV. 352.

*Najara,*



## INDEX.

### N.

*Najara*, the town of, taken by the prince of Wales,  
III. 316.

*Namur*,, fir Philip de, slain at Dendremonde, V.  
297.

*Namur*, fir Robert de, does homage to the king  
of England before Calais, II. 208.—Pro-  
mises to assist him against France, III. 453.  
—Joins the English forces, under the duke  
of Lancaster, before Tournehem, IV. 3.—  
Defeats a party of the French in a skirmish,  
24.

*Namur*, fir William de, gives the town of Sluys  
to the duke of Burgundy, in exchange for  
the country of Bethune, VII. 39.

*Nantes*, the town of, taken by the lord Charles of  
Blois, I. 275.—Besieged by Edward the  
Third, II. 33.—Surrenders to fir Bertrand  
du Guesclin, IV. 220.—Besieged by the  
earl of Buckingham, V. 243.

*Naples*, Joan, queen of, surrenders her dominions  
to pope Clement, V. 86.

*Narbonne*, the viscount de, captured by the free  
companies before Montaubon, III. 258.

*Naval engagement*, before Sluys, between the  
navies of France and England, I. 209.—  
Between the Spaniards and the English  
under

## INDEX.

Concludes a peace with the king of Spain, 48.—His extraordinary death, IX. 90.

*Navarre*, the young king of, goes to Paris, to endeavour to gain back his inheritance of Evreux, XII. 39.

*Navarre*, the lord Lewis of, takes the town of La Charité, III. 165.—Marries the queen of Naples, 210.

*Navarre*, Philip of, defends the possessions of his brother in Normandy against the king of France, II. 291.—Raises an army to raise the siege of St. Valery, 432.—Refuses to accept the peace which had been concluded between his brother and the duke of Normandy, 446.

*Necromancer*, a, offers to deliver up the castel del Ovo to the duke of Anjou by enchantment, VI. 41.—Beheaded by order of the earl of Savoy, 44.

*Negotiations*, carried on at Bilinges respecting a peace between the English and the French, VI. 335.

*Nesle*, Guy de, defeated and taken prisoner by the English in Saintonge, II. 269.—Slain, 272.

*Nesle*, lord William de, slain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 332.

*Nevele*, the church of, burnt by the earl of Flanders, with several hundreds of the men of Ghent in it, V. 303.

*Nevil's Cross*, the battle of, II. 189.

*Neville*,

## INDEX.

- Neville*, the lord, raises the siege of Mortain, V. 17.—Takes St. Manbert, 20.—Dismissed from his command in Northumberland, IX. 238.
- Newtown*, sir John, sent on an embassy to Richard the Second from the rebels of Kent, V. 341.
- Nicopoli*, the town of, in Turkey, besieged by the king of Hungary and John of Burgundy, XI. 237.—The siege raised by the sultan Bajazet, 297.
- Niort*, the town of, stormed by the English, IV. 184.—Surrenders to sir Bertrand du Guesclin, 213.
- Nogent sur Seine*, the town of, sold to the bishop of Troyes, II. 456.
- Nogent sur Seine*, the battle of, II. 451.
- Normandy*, the duchy of, invaded by Edward the Third, II. 125.
- Normandy*, the duke of, invades Hainault, I. 188.  
—Besieges Thin l'Eveque, 199.—Enters Brittany with the lord Charles of Blois, 271.—Leads a large army to oppose the king of England in Brittany, II. 38.—Enters into a truce with him, 42.—Leads an army into Gascony to oppose the earl of Derby, 107.—Takes the town of Miramont and others, 107 et seq.—Marries Jane, countess of Boulogne, 249.—Appointed regent of France during the imprisonment of king John in England, 361.  
—Besieges

## INDEX.

—Besieges Paris, 395.—Makes peace with the king of Navarre, 397.—Enters Paris, 405.—Lays siege to Milan, 444.—Collects a force to drive the English out of Champagne, 448.—Refuses to ratify the peace concluded between king John and the English, 459.—Declines to accept the challenge of the king of England, III. 35.—Endeavours to make peace with him, 40.—Appointed regent on the departure of king John for England, 119.—Crowned king of France at Rheims, under the title of Charles the Fifth, 160.

*Northumberland*, the earl of, takes Berwick castle, IV. 344.—Enters Scotland with a large army, 345.—Appointed lieutenant of Northumberland, &c. V. 329.—Enters Scotland with a large force, VI. 346.—Banished by Richard the Second, XII. 107.—Recalled by the earl of Derby, 147.

*Norwich*, the bishop of, appointed commander in chief of a croisade against the Clementists, VI. 262.—Enters Flanders contrary to the advice of sir Hugh Calverley, 271.—Takes the town of Gravelines and other places, 271 et seq.—Besieges Ypres, 287.—Abandons the siege, and returns to England, 301.—Badly received on his return, 332.

*Noyon*, the bishop of, taken prisoner at Manconseil, II. 415.

*Oliferne*,

## INDEX.

### O.

- Oliferne*, Agadinquor, an African chief, his conduct at the siege of Africa, X. 202.
- Orchies*, the town of, burnt by the earl of Hainault, I. 218.
- Orenze*, the town of, in Galicia, surrenders to the forces of the duke of Lancaster, VIII. 276.
- Oriflamme*, the sacred banner so called, displayed by the king of France at the battle of Rosebeque in Flanders, VI. 223.
- Orleans*, the duchess of, suspected of attempting to poison the king of France, X. 245.—Suspected of causing his illness, 330.
- Orthon*, a familiar spirit, serves the lord of Corasse, VII. 294.
- Ortringas*, the town of, taken by Peter d'Anchin, VII. 135.
- Ostrate*, Waustre, takes the castle of Roulebois sur Seine, III. 17.
- Ostrevant*, the country of, burnt by the garrison of Douay, I. 195.
- Ostrevant*, the count of, created a knight of the garter, X. 230.—Gives offence to the king of France, 232.—Does homage to the king of France for the county of Ostrevant, 235.—Raises an army to invade Frielland, XL. 262.—Invades Frielland, 275.—Disbands his  
his

## INDEX.

- his army, 279.—Invites the earl of Derby to Hainault after he had been banished from England, XII. 62.
- Otho*, fir, of Brunswicke demand his pay from pope Clement at Avignon, VII. 349.
- Osterbourne*, the battle of, IX. 254. [See also 266, *note*.]
- Oudenarde*, the town of, Besieged by the men of Ghent, V. 134. VI. 117.—Taken by Francis Atremen, 319.—Retaken by the lord Destournay, VI. 363.
- Oxford*, the earl of, taken prisoner in Gascony, II. 65.—Endeavours to dissuade the king of England from assisting his uncles in their pretensions to the crown of Castille, VII. 115.—Created duke of Ireland, VIII. 118.

## P.

- Pampeluna*, the town of, besieged by the king of Castille, IV. 382.
- Paris*, the city of, besieged by the duke of Normandy, II. 395.
- Parisians*, the, rebel against Charles the Sixth, VI. 14.—Appeased by the lord de Coucy, 16.—Fined by the king, 252.
- Portenay*, the lord de, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 336.

## INDEX.

*Paisac*, fir Walter de, takes St. Forget, and several other places in the Touloufain, VII. 308.—Accompanies the duke of Bourbon in an expedition into Castille, VIII. 155.—Arrives at Burgos, 214.

*St. Patrick's Hole*, in Ireland, its singular properties, XI. 130.

*Pavie*, fir Aymery de, governor of Calais, enters into a treaty with fir Geoffry de Chargny to deliver the town up to him, II. 239.—Prevented by the king of England, 240.—Taken prisoner by fir Geoffry de Chargny, and beheaded, 263.

*Peace*, concluded between France and England, III. 43.—At Leulinghen, XI. 105.

*Pedro the Fourth*, don, king of Castille, summoned to appear before pope Urban the Fifth at Avignon, III. 214.—Excommunicated, 215.—Endeavours to raise a force to oppose his brother don Henry, and the duke of Burgundy, 219.—Flies to Corunna, 221.—Goes to Aquitaine to solicit the assistance of the prince of Wales, 228.—Enters Spain, accompanied by the prince and a large force, 283.—Defeats the army of don Henry, 315.—Obtains the submission of Castille, 321.—Incurs the displeasure of the prince of Wales, 329.—Defeated by don Henry at Morteil, 354.—Taken prisoner, 357.—Killed by his brother, 359.

*Pembroke*,

## INDEX.

*Pembroke*, the earl of, sent to the assistance of the prince of Wales in Aquitaine, III. 403.—Makes war in Perigord, &c. 407.—Invades the territories of Anjou, IV. 10.—Returns to England, 121.—Appointed governor of Aquitaine, 152.—Defeated and taken prisoner by the Spaniards before La Rochelle, 161.—Insulted by Evan of Wales at St. Andero, 169.—Obtains his ransom, 253.—Dies at Arras, 255.

*Pennon*, the nature of the military ensign so called, explained, II. 307, *note*.

*Percy*, sir Henry, dies in Castille, IX. 20.

*Percy*, sir Henry, appointed commander in chief of the forces in Northumberland, IX. 238.

*Percy*, sir Ralph, captured at the battle of Otterbourne, IX. 259.

*Percy*, sir Thomas, appointed seneschal of Poitou, IV. 51.—Takes the castle of Montcontour, 133.—Captured by the French at Soubise, 188.—Resigns his office of steward of the household to king Richard the Second, XI. 359.—Appointed governor of Aquitaine, XII. 171.

*Perigord*, the cardinal de, endeavours to make peace between the king of France and the prince of Wales previous to the battle of Poitiers, II. 312.—Makes peace between the duke of Normandy and the king of Navarre, 445.



## INDEX.

- Perigord*, the earl of, defeats the high steward of Rouergue, III. 388.—Besieges Realville, 411.
- Perris*, the town of, destroyed by Richard the Second, VII. 70.
- Peterson*, John, admiral of the Flemish fleet, defeated and captured by the English off the island of Bas, IV. 142.
- St. Phagon*, the town of, in Spain, pillaged by some Breton soldiers, IX. 37.
- Philip*, lord, of Burgundy, killed before Aiguillon, II. 176.
- Philip of Valois*, chosen king of France, to the exclusion of Isabella, queen of England, I. 10, 79.—Makes war on the Flemings, 79.—Banishes Robert d'Artois from France, 93.—Puts on the cross, 107.—Enters into an alliance with the king of Scotland, 132.—Receives a defiance from the king of England, 139.—Leads an army to oppose his forces, 153.—Destroys the territories of sir John of Hainault, 167.—Invades Flanders, 181.—Sends forces into Scotland to assist the Scots against the English, 221.—Assembles a large army to raise the siege of Tournay, 225.—Enters into a truce with the king of England, 249.—Assists the lord Charles of Blois to recover the duchy of Brittany from the earl of Montfort, 270.—Assembles an army to oppose the earl of Derby in Gascony, II. 106.—Collects

## INDEX.

→ Collects another army to oppose king Edward in Normandy, 131.—Defeated at the battle of Crecy, 166.—Collects a large army to raise the siege of Calais, 214.—Enters into a truce with the king of England, 232.—Marries the lady Blanche, daughter of Philip, king of Navarre, 249.—Dies at Nogent le Roi, 267.

*Philip*, son of king John of France, created duke of Burgundy, III. 160.

*Philippa*, daughter of the earl William of Hainault, married to Edward the Third, I. 70.—In the absence of the king raises an army to oppose the Scots, II. 187.—Defeats them at the battle of Nevil's Cross, 189.—Receives the king of Scotland as her prisoner at York, 199.—Her three last requests to king Edward, IV. 21.—Her death, 22.

*Philippa*, daughter of the duke of Lancaster, married to the king of Portugal, VIII. 178.

*Picardy*, the country of, invaded by king Edward the Third, II. 146.

*Pierrepont*, the town of, taken by sir Eustace d'Ambreticourt, III. 33.

*Piquigny*, sir John de, delivers the king of Navarre from the castle of Alleres, II. 385.—Endeavours to take the town of Amiens, 418.—Forces the duke of Normandy to raise the siege of Mauconseil, II. 414.—Dies at La Herrielle, 455.

## INDEX.

- Plague*, the, desolates all Europe, II. 265.
- Plaisac*, Heliot de, governor of Boutville, taken by the French, V. 56.
- Poitiers*, the city of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 183.—Surrenders to sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 183.
- Poitiers*, the battle of, between the king of France and the prince of Wales, II. 320.
- Poitiers*, sir Charles de, burnt to death at a masked dance at Paris, XI. 72.
- Poix*, the town of, destroyed by the English under Edward the Third, II. 147.
- St. Pol*, the town of, besieged by the duke of Lancaster, IV. 33.
- St. Pol*, the earl of, slain at the battle of Crecy, II. 168.
- St. Pol*, the count de, captured by the English at Lique, and sent to England, IV. 261.—Marries the lady Maude, daughter of the prince of Wales, V. 71.—Leads an army into Friesland, XI. 272.
- Pammiers*, the lord de, beheaded at Bourdeaux for treason, IV. 305.
- Pompadour*, the lord of, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 336.
- Pondaire*, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 62.
- the lord de, slain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 336.
- Pans*,

## INDEX.

*Pons*, the lord de, turns to the French interest,  
IV. 130.

*Pont au Demer*, the town of, in Normandy, taken  
by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 292.

*Pont du St. Esprit*, the town of, taken by the free  
companies, III. 86.

*Pontevedra*, the town of, in Galicia, surrenders  
to the army of the duke of Lancaster,  
VIII. 81.

*Ponthieu*, the country of, conquered by the forces  
under sir Hugh de Chatillon, III. 397.

*Ponthieu*, the earl of, captured at the battle of Poi-  
tiers, II. 335.

*Populace*, of England, rebel against king Richard  
and the nobility, V. 333.—Enter London  
and do much mischief, 347.—Dispersed by  
the king, 363.

*Porcien*, the earl of, ransomed, III. 398.

*Porkers of la Respaille*, a set of pillagers so called,  
commit several depredations in Flanders,  
VI. 385.

*Port St. Marie*, taken by the duke of Anjou,  
IV. 75.

*Portboeuf*, Peter, governor of Dinant, taken pri-  
soner, II. 37.

*Portelet*, don Juan Ferdinando de, informs Froissart  
of many particulars relative to the affairs of  
Portugal, VII. 362.

*Poulet*, the castle of, in Gascony, taken by the  
English under sir Thomas Trivet, V. 38.

## INDEX.

*Poursuivant d'Amour*, the meaning of the title explained, III. 401, *note*.

*Pressigny*, sir Reginald de, put to death, II. 278.

*Preux*, the castle of, taken by the duke of Burgundy, III. 168.

*Prie*, the lord of, captured at the battle of Auray, III. 192.

*Primiaux*, John, a citizen of Ghent, appointed one of the commanders of the Whitehoods in that city, V. 131.—Takes the town of Oudenarde, 162.—Banished from Flanders, 167.—Delivered up to the earl, and beheaded, 168.

*Pulpiroz*, the castle of, taken by the French under sir Walter de Passac, VII. 316.

*Punach*, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 62.

## Q.

*Quarrel*, between the houses of Brabant and Gueldres, the cause of, explained, IX. 48.

*Queux*, three, besieged in the town of Melun sur Seine, II. 444.

*Quimpercorentin*, the town of, in Brittany, taken by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 222.

*Quimperlé*, the town of, in Brittany, taken by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 222.—Besieged by the duke of Brittany, 270.

*Raimbaut*,

## INDEX.

### R.

*Raimbaut*, Lewis, a captain of the free companies, beheaded, VII. 234.

*Ramsay*, Alexander, takes the castle of Berwick, IV. 336.—Captured in the castle by the earl of Northumberland, 344.

*Ravenal*, lord Raoul de, captured at Mauçonseil, II. 415.

*Reahville*, the town of, taken by storm by the earl of Perigord, III. 426.

*Reginald*, count of Guelders, his extravagance, IX. 49.—Marries the daughter of Bertald, of Mechlin, 56.—Afterwards marries Isabella, daughter of Edward the Second of England, 56.

*Rennes*, the town of, taken by the earl of Montfort, or duke of Brittany, I. 259.—Surrenders to the lord Charles of Blois, 299.—Besieged by the duke of Lancaster, 374.—Taken by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 222.

*Reala*, La, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 82.—Surrenders to the duke of Anjou, IV. 257.

*Reynwal*, lord Raoul de, defeated by the English and Navarrais, under sir Godfrey de Harcourt, II. 363.

*Rheims*,

## INDEX.

*Rbeims*, the town of, besieged by Edward the Third, III. 13.

*Ribado*, count, of Spain, one of the ministers of Charles the Fourth of France, arrested by the duke of Burgundy while regent, XI. 43.

*Ribeumont*, sir Eustace de, captured near Calais, II. 246.—Receives a chaplet of pearls from the king of England, in reward for his prowess, 247.—Slain at the battle of Poitiers, 332.

*Ribemont*, sir Galahant de, mortally wounded in a skirmish with the English, III. 10.

*Richard*, son of the prince of Wales, declared presumptive heir to the throne of England, III. 200, 279.—Crowned king of England, 282.

*Richard* the Second, placed under the tuition of sir Guiscard d'Angle, III. 283.—Enters into an alliance with the king of Navarre, 373.—Sends an army to the assistance of the duke of Brittany, V. 150.—Quells the rebellion of the populace under Wat Tyler, &c. 363.—Makes a tour through several parts of England to punish the insurgents, 372.—Marries the lady Anne of Bohemia, VI. 33.—Enters into a truce with France, 337.—Heads an army to oppose the Scots and the admiral of France, VII. 57.—Destroys the abbey of Melrose, and several places in Scotland, 65 et seq.—Quarrels

## INDEX.

Quarrels with his uncles of York and Gloucester, VIII. 226.—Excites the discontent of the people of England, 226.—Retires to Wales, 231.—Constrained by the people to appoint commissioners to examine into accounts of his confidential ministers, 319.—Retires to Bristol, 331.—Takes measures to counteract the proceedings of the new council, which had been appointed for him by the commissioners of accounts, 336.—Sends the duke of Ireland, as his lieutenant, with a large army towards London, 346.—His troops defeated near Oxford, 355.—Returns to London, under the conduct of the archbishop of Canterbury, 362.—Assembles a parliament to receive the homage of his subjects, 364.—Enters into a truce with the king of France, 347.—Holds a grand tournament at London, X. 222.—Endeavours to make peace with France, 250.—Concludes a peace with king Charles, XI. 105.—Presents the duke of Lancaster with the duchy of Aquitaine, 119.—Leads an army into Ireland, 124.—Seeks to marry the lady Isabella, daughter of the king of France, 142.—Obtains the submission of four Irish kings, 156.—Recalls the duke of Lancaster from Aquitaine, 168.—Has an interview with the king of France at Ardres, 285.—Receives the lady Isabella from king Charles in his tent at Ardres,



## INDEX:

Ardres, XI. 288.—Marries her at Calais, 289.—Becomes unpopular in England, 351.—Orders the duke of Gloucester to be arrested, 364.—Invests the earl of Rutland with the constableship of England, XII. 33.—Proclaims a feast to be held at Eltham, 43.—Banishes the earl marshal for life, and the earl of Derby for six years, 56.—Seizes the revenues of the duchy of Lancaster on the death of the duke, 92.—Breaks off a marriage which was in contemplation between the earl of Derby and the daughter of the duke of Berry, 95.—Holds a tournament at Windfor, which is but thinly attended, 104.—Banishes the earl of Northumberland and his son, 107.—The people of England rise in rebellion against him, and in favour of the earl of Derby, 109.—Retires to Flint [*Conway*] castle, 135.—Surrenders to the earl of Derby, 140.—Imprisoned in the Tower of London, 145.—Resigns the crown in favour of the earl of Derby, 157.—His death, 190.—His funeral, 193.

*Ridabavia*, the town of, taken by storm by the duke of Lancaster, VIII. 172.

*Rigault*, Giles, de Rouay, presented with the red hat in the presence of king John at Paris, II. 270.

*de la*, the lord de la, takes the castle of Aquigni, III. 167.—Imprisoned by the dukes of Burgundy and Berry during the regency,

## INDEX.

- regency, XI. 46.—His estates confiscated, 50.—Delivered from prison, 1901.
- Robert*, duke of Hedelberg, elected emperor of Germany, XII. 196.
- Robert*, king of Sicily, endeavours to make peace between the kings of France and England, I. 213.
- Robert*, the hermit, ordered by a vision to interfere in bringing about a peace between France and England, XI. 176.—Attends the conferences at Leulinghen, 179.—Sent to England, 181.
- Robesart*, the canon de, defeats the Navarrois near Creil, II. 430.—Turns to the English interest, III. 402.
- Roché*, La, sur Yon, the castle of, taken by the duke of Cambridge, III. 455.—Surrenders to the French under sir Oliver de Clifton, IV. 227.
- Roche*, La, d'Errien, the town of, taken by sir Thomas Daggeworth, II. 210.—Besieged by the lord Charles of Blois, 211.—Surrenders to sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 222.
- Rochesouart*, the viscount de, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 336.—Imprisoned by the prince of Wales, III. 429.—Liberated, 458.—His lands invaded by sir John Chandos, IV. 8.
- Rochelle*, the town of, blockaded by the Spaniards and French under Evan of Wales, IV. 185.—Turns to the French interest, 195.
- Rochemilon*,

## INDEX.

- Rochemilon*, the castle of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 77.
- Roche-posay*, La, the town of, taken by the French under sir John de Bueil, III. 428.
- Rochetaillade*, John de, a fanatical cordelier friar, prophecies, III. 33.
- Romorantin*, the town of, taken by the prince of Wales, II. 298.
- Roquemadour*, the town of, taken by sir John Chandos, III. 442.
- Rosebecque*, the battle of, between the king of France and the men of Ghent, VI. 225.
- Rosem*, the lord de, captured by the duke of Anjou, IV. 314.
- Roucy*, the town of, in Picardy, taken by Robin Scott, II. 427.—Retaken by the archbishop of Rheims, 459.
- Rouelles*, the town of, in Galicia, surrenders to the duke of Lancaster, VIII. 54.
- Rouen*, the inhabitants of, rebel against Charles the Sixth, VI. 17.
- Rouilleboise sur Seine*, the castle of, taken by Wanstre Ostrate, III. 17.—Delivered up to sir Bertrand du Guesclin, 162.
- Routtes*, a band of armed men so called, make war on Arragon, VIII. 133.—Defeated by Raymond de Bachez, 139.
- Roye*, the lord of, defeats and captures the lord of Gomigines, III. 21.

*Roye,*

## INDEX.

*Roye*, fir Reginald de, with two other knights, holds a tournament near Calais against all comers, X. 89.

*Rue*, James de la, executed at Paris for treason, IV. 291.

## S.

*Saimpi*, the lord de, with two other knights, holds a tournament near Calais, against all comers, X. 89.

*Saintes*, the town of, surrenders to the French forces, IV. 190.

*Saintonge*, the lord de, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 336.

*Saintre*, lord John de, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 336.

*Salisbury*, the earl of, taken prisoner by the garrison of Lisle, I. 84.—Exchanged for the earl of Moray, 297.—Heads an expedition into Brittany, IV. 219.—Sent on an embassy to France, XII. 96.—Unites with the earl of Huntingdon in his plan to murder king Henry, 180.—Beheaded, 186.

*Salisbury*, the countess of, defends Wark Castle against the Scots, I. 288.—Resists with great spirit the dishonourable overtures of king Edward, 294.

*Salisbury*,

## INDEX.

*Salisbury*, fir John, beheaded at Oxford, VII.  
359.

*Salle*, fir Robert, governor of Norwich, killed by  
the insurgents in the reign of Richard the  
Second, V. 356.

*Salvatierra*, the town of, surrenders to the army  
of don Pedro and the prince of Wales, III.  
283.

*St. Salvin*, the abbey of, besieged by the French,  
IV. 31.

*Sancerre*, the lord Lewis de, appointed marshal of  
France, III. 450.—Defeats the earl of Pem-  
broke at Puirenon, IV. 11.—Visits the  
count de Foix at Orthes, IX. 334.—Made  
constable of France, XII. 17.

*Santaren*, the town of, rebels against the king of  
Castille, VII. 247.—Returns to obedience,  
250.

*Sauvage*, Denys's edition of Froissart's Chronicles  
noticed, I. lxxviii.

*Sauveterre*, the town of, taken by the duke of An-  
jou, IV. 323.

*St. Sauveur le Vicomte*, the castle of, taken by the  
French, IV. 273.

*Saxony*, the duke of, sent by the emperor of  
Germany into England to see the country  
previous to the marriage of the lady Anne,  
of Bohemia, to Richard the Second, V.  
188.

*Scarcity,*

## INDEX.

*Scarcity*, a great one in France, II. 270.

*Schism*, occasioned in the church by the election of two popes, V. 78.

*Scots*, the, invade England under Robert Bruce, I. 46.—Their character and manners, 46.—Retake many of their fortresses, and penetrate as far as Durham into England, 221.—Retake Edinburgh, 224.—Take Stirling Castle, 279.—Enter into a truce with the king of England, 280.—Invade England under king David, 283.—Take the town of Durham, 286.—Besiege Wark Castle, 286.—Defeated by the English at the battle of Nevil's Cross, II. 189.—Refuse to abide by the truce which had been agreed upon at Belinge, VI. 350.—Enter England contrary to the orders of king Robert, 352.—Invade England with the assistance of sir John de Vienne, VII. 54.—Treat the admiral with much harshness, 77.—Invade England under the young earl of Douglas, IX. 246.—Defeat the English at the battle of Otterbourne, 263.

*Scott*, Robin, takes the town of Roucy, in Picardy, II. 427.

*Seaulle*, the town of, taken by the French under sir William de la Tremouille, IX. 97.

*Seclin*, the town of, burnt by the earl of Hainault, I. 27.

*Segar*, John, governor of Noyent, murdered at Troyes, II. 457.

## INDEX.

*Senerach*, the lord de, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 332.

*Sequainville*, sir Peter de, beheaded at Roten, III. 161.

*St. Severe*, in Saintonge, taken by the duke of Berry, IV. 182.

*Sleidan*, his abridgment of Froissart's Chronicles noticed, I. xciii.

*Sluys*, the town of, taken by the men of Ghent, VI. 106.—Exchanged for the country of Bethune, VII. 39.

*Seubise*, the castle of, taken by the French under Evan of Wales, IV. 189.

*Southampton*, the town of, pillaged by the French, I. 140.

*Sow*, the use of the military machine so called, IV. 311.

*Spaniards*, the, defeated at sea by Edward the Third, II. 260.

*Spencer*, sir Hugh, the elder, besieged with Edward the Second in Bristol, I. 27.—Taken and beheaded, 29.

*Spencer*, sir Hugh, the younger, directs the government of Edward the Second, I. 10.—Causes the earl of Lancaster to be beheaded, 11.—Frustrates the endeavours of queen Isabella to obtain assistance in France, 17.—Besieged with the king in Bristol by the queen's forces, 27.—Ignominiously beheaded at Hereford, 32.

*Spencer*,

## INDEX.

*Spencer*, the lord de, his death, IV. 200.

*Stafford*, lord, captured before Vannes, II. 36.—  
Exchanged for the lord of Clifton, 43.—  
Created an earl, 253.

*Stafford*, lord Ralph, killed by sir John Holland,  
VII. 61.

*Standwich*, John, puts Wat Tyler to death in  
Smithfield, V. 361.

*Star*, the order of the, revived by king John of  
France, II. 270.

*Stirling Castle*, taken by the Scots, I. 279.

*Straw*, Jack, heads the populace of England in  
the rebellion against king Richard and the  
nobility, V. 336.—Taken and beheaded,  
364.

*Sudbury*, Simon de, archbishop of Canterbury  
and chancellor of England, murdered in  
the Tower of London by Wat Tyler, V.  
351.

*Suffolk*, the earl of, captured by the governor of  
Lisle, I. 184.

*Surgeres*, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby,  
II. 181.—Surrenders to sir Bertrand du  
Guesclin, IV. 198.



## INDEX.

### T.

*Taillebourg*, the town of, taken by the English under the earl of Derby. II. 181.—Surrenders to the French, IV. 190.—Besieged by the duke of Bourbon, VII. 9.

*Tailles*, the nature of the tax so called, explained, III. 335, *note*.

*Talbot*, lord, dies at Ruelles in Spain, IX. 20.

*Tankerville*, the earl of, taken prisoner by the English under Edward the Third, II. 136.—Captured at the battle of Poitiers, 335.

*Tarbe*, sir Aimery de, killed in a naval engagement before la Rochelle, IV. 161.

*Tassegnon*, the castle of, in Gascony, taken by sir Thomas Trivet, V. 36.

*Tax on income*, established in France, II. 286.

*Tello*, don, brother of Henry, king of Castille, defeats a body of English troops under sir William Felton, III. 290.

*Terrieres*, the town of, taken by sir John Chandos, III. 411.

*Tertre*, Peter du, executed at Paris for treason, IV. 291.

*Tetenair*, Geoffry, obtains possession of the castle of Ventadour, in Auvergne, V. 75.—Mortally wounded, IX. 319.—Makes his will, 320.—His death, 322.

*Thilliers*,

## INDEX.

*Tbilliers*, the castle of, taken by king John of France, II. 292.

*Thin l'Eveque*, the town of, besieged by the duke of Normandy, I. 199.

*Thouars*, the town of, taken by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 205.

*Thurie*, the town and castle of, taken by le Bastot de Mauleon, VII. 227.

*Tibald*, doctor Simon, bishop of London, preaches the justice of the war against France, III. 415.

*Tilt*, at Entença, between sir John Holland and sir Reginald de Roye, VIII. 202.

*Tonnières*, the town of, taken by Edward the Third, III. 27.

*Tonniens*, the town of, taken by the duke of Normandy, II. 114.—Surrenders to the duke of Anjou, IV. 75.

*Tour*, the lord de la, slain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 332.

*Touraine*, the duke of, brother of Charles the Sixth of France, buys the reversion of the county of Blois, X. 340.—Created duke of Orleans, XI. 6.

*Tournament*, held at Mons, I. 249.—Given by king Edward the Third at London, out of affection for the countess of Salisbury, II. 18.—Held at Vannes before the duke of Brittany and the earl of Buckingham, V. 263.—At Cambray, in honour of the marriage

## INDEX.

riage of the children of Burgundy with those of Hainault, VI. 378.—At Paris, in honour of queen Isabella's public entrance, IX. 368.—At Inglevare, near Calais, by three French knights against all comers, X. 89.—Held at London, by order of Richard the Second, X. 222.—At Windsor, which is badly attended, XII. 104.—Held at Oxford by the earl of Huntingdon, *ibid.* 180.

*Tierney*, the town of, besieged by Edward the Third, I. 216.

*Treaty of alliance*, entered into at Vilvorde, between the countries of Flanders, Brabant, and Hainault, I. 214.

*Treaty of peace*, copy of the, between the duke of Burgundy and the men of Ghent, VII. 97.

*Trelwney*, sir Matthew, severely wounded at Rocheperton, II. 4.—Taken prisoner, 5.—Rescued from death, 13.

*Tremouille*, sir William de la, appointed to command a body of men to assist the dukes of Brabant against the duke of Gueldres, IX. 95.

*Tressilian*, sir Robert, beheaded by order of the duke of Gloucester and his party, VIII. 342.

*Trivet*, sir Thomas, sent to the assistance of the king of Navarre, V. 34.—Takes several forts in Gascony, 35 et seq.—Marches into Castille,

## INDEX.

- Castille, 41.—Returns to England, 56.—  
 Defeated by the French at Arras, V. 192.  
 Committed to the Tower of London, VI.  
 333.—Killed by a fall from his horse,  
 VIII. 323.
- Truce*, between the English and the Scots, I. 71.  
 —Between the French and English, 247.  
 —Between the English and the Scots, 280,  
 297.—Between the lord Charles of Blois  
 and the countess of Montfort, II. 16.—  
 For three years, between the French and  
 English, 42.—Between France and Eng-  
 land, 232.—Prolonged by order of pope  
 Innocent, 280.—Between France and Eng-  
 land, 370.—Between the English and the  
 Scots, IV. 81.—Between the French and  
 English, 271, 277.—Between the English  
 and Scots, 366.—Between the French and  
 English with all their allies, VI. 337.—Be-  
 tween the kings of Castille and Portugal,  
 VII. 291.—Between the French and Eng-  
 lish, IX. 347. XI. 67, 105. XII. 195.
- Tyler*, Wat, heads the populace of England in  
 their rebellion against king Richard the Se-  
 cond and the nobility, V. 336.—Killed  
 in Smithfield, 361.

## INDEX.

### U.

*Urban the Fifth*, pope, elected at Avignon, III. 97.

—Preaches a croisade against the Saracens, 104.—Excommunicates don Pedro, king of Castille, 215.—His death, IV. 115.

*Urban the Sixth*, elected at Rome, IV. 363.—

Sends a bull to England for the destruction of the Clementists, VI. 264.—Besieged in Perugia, VII. 350.—Escapes to Rome, 351.

—Dies at Rome, X. 64.

*Utrecht*, the town of, taken by the earl of Hainault,

II. 103.

*Uzes*, the castle of, in Auvergne, taken by sir John

Devereux, IV. 135.—Surrenders to sir Bertrand du Guesclin, 137.

### V.

*Valery*, the castle of, taken by the king of Na-

varre, II. 411.—Taken by the earl de St.

Pol, 432.—Taken by sir Hugh de Chatillon, III. 397.

*Valois*, the lady Joan de, concludes a truce be-

tween the kings of France and England, I. 246,

*Vannes*,

## INDEX.

- Vannes*, the town of, surrenders to the earl of Montfort as duke of Brittany, I. 262.—Taken by storm by the lord Charles of Blois, 315.—Retaken by lord Robert d'Artois, II. 28.—Taken by sir Oliver de Clifton, 30.—Besieged by the English, 32.—Taken by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 222.
- Varenes*, John de, resigns all his preferments in the church, XI. 116.
- Vauclingen*, the town of, taken by the duke of Burgundy, IV. 288.
- Vaudemont*, earl of, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 332.
- Vaufort de la Croix*, sir, defeated in a skirmish at Pont a Tressin, I. 230.—Put to death at Lisle, 231.
- Vaulx*, sir Henry de, taken prisoner at Cormicy, III. 26.
- Ventadour*, the castle of, in Auvergne, betrayed to Geoffrey Tete noir, V. 75.—Besieged by the duke of Berry, IX. 93.—Taken by his forces, X. 79.
- Verchin*, sir Gerard de, mortally wounded in a tournament at Mons, I. 249.
- Verneuil*, the town of, taken by the duke of Lancaster, II. 292.
- Verteuil*, the town of, taken by the duke of Bourbon, VII. 51.
- Vienne*, sir John de, governor of Calais, sent prisoner to England, II. 232.
- Vienne*,

## INDEX.

- Vienne*, sir John de, admiral of France, heads an expedition to Scotland to invade England, VI. 383.—Badly treated by the Scots, VII. 15.—Invades England, accompanied by a Scottish army, 54.—Returns to France, 80.—Sent on an embassy into Castile, IX. 312.—Killed at the battle of Nicopoli, XI. 299.
- Vienne*, the dauphin of, invested with the duchy of Normandy, II. 285.
- Vietat*, don Alphonso, high admiral of Portugal, sent to England to convey the duke of Lancaster and his army to Portugal, VIII. 3.
- Villaines*, Le begue de, one of the ministers of Charles the Sixth, arrested by the duke of Burgundy during his regency, XI. 43.—Liberated, 49.
- Villeclope*, the town of, in Galicia, taken by the duke of Lancaster, VIII. 59.
- Vilelfranche*, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 91.—Taken by storm by the duke of Normandy, 107.—Taken by sir John Chandos, III. 442.
- Visconti*, sir Bernabo de, put to death by his nephew, VII. 5.
- Visconti*, sir Galeas de, puts sir Bernabo, his uncle, to death, VII. 5.—Enters into an alliance with the sultan Bajazer, XI. 247.

*Wake,*

## INDEX.

### W.

*Wake*, sir Thomas, defeated by the Gascon lords, III. 388.

*Walworth*, sir William, lord mayor of London, assists to secure Wat Tyler in Smithfield, V. 361.

*Wark castle*, belonging to the earl of Salisbury, besieged by the Scots, I. 286.

*Wars*, the, between France and England, how caused, I. 9.

*Warwick*, the earl of, joins the duke of Gloucester in his attempts to excite disturbances in England, XI. 349.—Sent to the Tower, XII. 25.—Banished to the Isle of Wight, 30.—Recalled by the earl of Derby, 147.

*Wersey*, lord Robert de, taken prisoner at the battle of Nevil's Cross, II. 196.

*Whitehoods*, the custom of wearing them revived at Ghent, V. 104.

*Whitehoods*, the, see "Ghent, men of."

*Winceslaus the Sixth*, emperor of Germany, his election, V. 149.—sends his sister, Anne of Bohemia, to England, to be married to Richard the Second, VI. 30.—Dies at Luxembourg, 335.

*Wisant*, James and Peter, their patriotic conduct during the siege of Calais, II. 225:

*Wykeham*,



## INDEX.

*Wykeham*, sir William, appointed bishop of Worcester and chancellor of England, III. 385.

## Y.

*York*, the archbishop of, dismissed from his office of treasurer by the commissioners of accounts, VIII. 329.

*York*, the duke of, his creation, VIII. 118.—  
Confederates with the duke of Gloucester and others against king Richard and his council, 307.

*Ypres*, the town of, enters into an alliance with the men of Ghent, V. 133.—Turns to the earl of Flanders, 291.—Surrenders to the king of France, VI. 199.—Besieged by the bishop of Norwich, 287.

*Yrier*, the town of, in Limoges, taken by sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 102.

FINIS.







Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 013 516 807

113  
.F77  
1808  
v.12

DATE DUE

--	--

STANFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARY  
STANFORD, CALIFORNIA  
94305

